Forgotten Books

www.forgottenbooks.com

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

*Dean's Stereotype Edition.*

# MAIR'S

# INTRODUCTION

TO

# LATIN SYNTAX.

FROM THE EDINBURGH STEREOTYPE EDITION.

REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY

A. R. CARSON,

RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

## COPIOUS EXERCISES UPON THE DECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH:

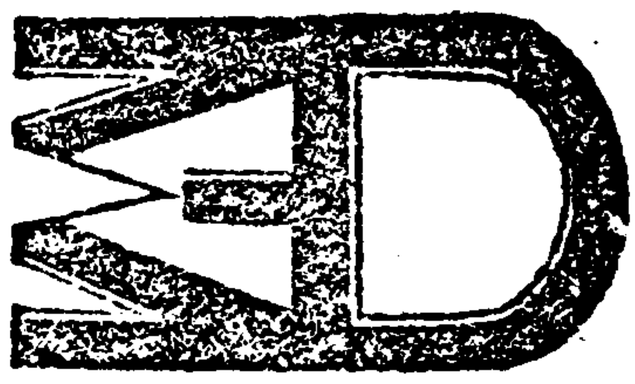
AND

## AN EXEMPLIFICATION OF THE SEVERAL MOODS AND TENSES.

BY

DAVID PATTERSON, A.M.

LATE RECTOR OF THE GRAMMAR SCHOOL OF KIRKWALL, AND TEACHER OF LANGUAGES IN NEW YORK.



PHILADELPHIA:

J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

1857.

ENTERED,
*According to the Act of Congress, in the year 1827, by*
WILLIAM E. DEAN,
*In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Southern District of*
NEW YORK.

# ADVERTISEMENT.

Mr. Stewart, Printer to the University of Edinburgh, having, in the year 1815, proposed publishing a Stereotype edition of Mair's Introduction, requested me to undertake the correction of the proof-sheets. The pains bestowed upon the work may be in some degree appreciated, when it is known, that almost every sentence was traced to its original author, by which means several important changes were introduced, and the Stereotype edition, I trust, rendered considerably more accurate than any other late edition of the same book. Soon after this, a Company of Booksellers in Edinburgh also published an edition of this work, in which they not only adopted the changes which with much labour I had been enabled to make, but had even the hardihood to copy such notes as I had subjoined, and that too with my initials (A. R. C.); by which I was made answerable for whatever errors this spurious edition might happen to contain. In these circumstances, it appears necessary to declare to the public, who, from these initials occurring in different parts of the work, and from the still ampler notices exhibited in the catalogues of booksellers, and advertisements in newspapers, are generally aware of its having passed through my hands, that the Stereotype edition printed by Mr. Stewart is that alone in which I had any concern, and that any copy from it is a daring attempt to impose a fraud upon the Teachers of the country, under the sanction of a signature to which it has no claim. This declaration I make with the greater confidence, because I neither have now, nor ever had, any share whatever in the profits arising from the sale of the book, and because my sole object in superintending the impression, was to furnish my own Class and Teachers in general with a more correct edition of a book much used in our public seminaries, and which, from the numberless errors with which it was disfigured, had been rendered almost wholly unfit for the purposes of education.

A. R. CARSON.

*Edinburgh,*
*August*, 1817.

765195 475 .12 28M

# EDITOR'S PREFACE.

THE ordinary editions of Mair's Introduction abound so much in errors, that this popular school book has been thereby rendered almost unfit for use. A few years ago it was revised and corrected by A. R. Carson, Rector of the High School of Edinburgh, and stereotyped. From this edition, the most accurate and valuable which has yet appeared, the present work has been printed.

But Mair's Introduction affords us merely an exemplification of the Rules of Construction. It has always appeared to the editor that an exemplification of the Moods and Tenses of the Verb was no less necessary than the former. For certainly few tasks can be more dry, unmeaning, and repulsive to the young student, than the tabular forms of nouns and verbs as exhibited in our Grammars. To supply this defect, the editor has compiled suitable exercises on the Declinable Parts of Speech, and an exemplification of the Moods and Tenses.

This division of the work, if properly understood, will form an admirable introduction to translating: and will prepare the student to enter on that business with intelligence.

DAVID PATTERSON.

*New-York, November*, 1827.

# PREFACE.

---

THE rules of Syntax, here exemplified, are taken from the Rudiments, composed and published by Mr. Thomas Ruddiman, being generally allowed to be the most accurate and best system of that kind. And as the rules are of two kinds, *viz.* primary or fundamental, to which all the rest are reducible; and secondary or elliptical, which are by far the most numerous; these latter rules are distinguished from the former by an asterisk on the margin.

To make the young scholar comprehend the meaning and extent of the rules with greater ease, each of them is illustrated with one or more examples of construed Latin: and where it is necessary, grammatical terms are explained, and lists, or catalogues of the words belonging to the rules, given. To which is subjoined, a pretty large collection of explanatory notes, exhibiting the exceptions, the varieties, the elegant phrases and modes of expression that occur in authors, and pointing out the method of supplying the elliptical constructions, and reducing them to the primary or fundamental rules. Some few of the notes are exemplified; the proper time of teaching the rest is left to the discretion of the master.

After the notes, follow the examples; which are of two sorts. The first go only the length of this mark ¶; and are generally short, being intended purely for the exemplification of the rule to which they are subjoined. The second sort, which begin at the aforesaid mark, are longer; wherein not only the rule to which they are annexed, is exemplified, but the preceding rules are again brought upon the field, in order to render them more familiar to the mind, and fix them more effectually in the memory.

Most of the examples, whether of the first or second sorts, are excerpted from the Latin authors, being such sentences as would admit of a literal translation, and are adapted to our purpose, with little or no variation. Some of them, indeed, for the sake of enriching the exemplification, are

patched or made up of sentences, coupled together; but the expressions, separately taken, are generally classical; and, it is hoped no great impropriety will be found in the manner of their junction.

To the examples are subjoined on each rule a few English exercises, intended as another piece of recreation to the young student, as well as a further trial of his skill. In the examples, the Latin words being laid to his hand, he needs only, in order to make good Latin, attend to the declensions, conjugations, and rules of syntax; whereas, by these exercises, he will be obliged to go in search of vocables, and so, by degrees, learn to distinguish the words that are proper for his purpose from such as are not so. And here I may add, that, could boys be persuaded, by a careful use of their dictionary, to acquaint themselves thoroughly with the signification, derivation, composition, and proper use of the Latin words that occur in the several parts of their studies, they would soon find the benefit of it: their proficiency would, in this case, do more than reward their pains. To a neglect on this head, is frequently owing the small progress boys make, and the difficulty they find in speaking and writing Latin; being equally puzzled for want of words, and at a loss how to apply them.

The rules in the Rudiments being ranged according to the order of the parts of speech, it was impossible to exemplify them in that order, without a medley of antecedent and subsequent rules, which by all means was to be avoided. The reader, therefore, is desired to begin with No. 2.; then proceed to No. 28.; from that to No. 45. He next turns over to No. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72.; then to No. 75, 76.; and on each of these rules he is to read till he come to this mark ¶, except No. 28.; in which he is to read only the first four paragraphs. After this, he is to return to the beginning of the book, and go straight on to the end, omitting only what was read on the above-mentioned rules; and, by proceeding in this manner, he will find no posterior rule anticipated. The English exercises, too, are so chosen, that they may be turned into good Latin without recourse to any subsequent rule.

As the governed words in the exemplification of several rules, viz. No. 12. 21. 29. 62. 64. and 73. may be put in different cases; and though, generally speaking, the Latin will be grammatical and good in either of them; yet, to prevent any doubt that may arise in the learner's mind on

this head, and to enable him to use with certainty the case used by the author the example is brought from, I have given the following mark of distinction, viz. in No. 12. 21. 62. and 64. when the governed word is put in the ablative, it has the figure 6 before it; and in No. 29. when the governed word is to be put in the accusative, it has the figure 4 before it. In like manner, in No. 73. the governed word has the figure 1 or 4 before it, according as it is to be put in the nominative or accusative. But in the exemplification of each of these six rules, when the governed word has no figure prefixed, it is then to be put in the other cases mentioned in the rule. Nor are these distinctive figures applied thus in the exemplification of the above rules only, but also in all the subsequent places where these ambiguous constructions recur.

The examples and English exercises contained in this Introduction, being of a select kind, consisting generally of moral, historical, and mythological sentences, the perusal of them will, accordingly, be attended with peculiar advantages. The first sort have a natural tendency to form and dispose the mind to virtue, and to produce such impressions as will influence the temper and behaviour of youth, not while at school only, but through the whole course of their life. By the use of the second and third sort, boys will acquire a stock of ancient history and mythology, and so get acquainted, in some measure, with the Roman writers before they begin to read them.

To the Introduction is subjoined an Epitome of Ancient History, containing a succinct account of the most memorable transactions and events that occur, from the creation to the birth of CHRIST. And, whereas, several things suspected of fiction or romance, especially with respect to the Assyrian and Babylonian monarchies, were, in compliance with the commonly received opinion, admitted into the first edition; these are now either thrown out, or taken notice of as fabulous, and the accounts, that by the best judges are esteemed genuine, introduced. These alterations, it is hoped, will render this epitome more perfect, and consequently a fitter system for initiating youth in the useful study of history. And, as the Latin of this epitome, is for the most part, taken from an historian much admired for conciseness, delicacy, and purity of language, it will serve to exercise and improve the learner, not barely in the knowledge of grammar, but even in the elegance and beauties of

the Latin tongue. The chronology here used is the same with that adopted by the writers of the Universal History. Several chronological mistakes, which had escaped observation in the first edition, are here rectified.

J M.

# EXERCISES

## UPON THE

# DECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH

---

View or scheme of the five modes of declension; except that Greek words and neuters are omitted; the nominative singular also does not appear in its various forms.

| I. | II. | III. | IV. | V. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | | | | |
| Nom. | | | | |
| Gen. æ | ī | īs | ūs | eī |
| Dat. æ | ō | ī | uī | eī |
| Acc. am | um | em | um | em |
| Voc. like Nom. | like Nom. | like Nom. | like Nom. | like Nom. |
| Abl. â | ō | ē | ū | ē |
| Plur. | | | | |
| Nom. æ | ī | ēs | ūs | ēs |
| Gen. arum | ōrum | um | uum | ērum |
| Dat. īs | īs | ĭbus | ĭbus | ēbus |
| Acc. ās | ōs | ēs | ūs | ēs |
| Voc. like Nom. | like Nom. | like Nom. | like Nom. | like Nom. |
| Abl. like Dat. | like Dat. | like Dat. | like Dat. | like Dat. |

Exercises upon Nouns and Adjectives, through all the degrees of Comparison.*

## FIRST DECLENSION.

*Dura penna*, a hard pen.
*Mollis penna*, a soft pen.
*Formosa puella*, a beautiful girl.
*Pauper casa*, a poor cottage.
*Humilis casa*, an humble cottage.
*Impiger agricola*, an active husbandman.
*Ferox athleta*, a fierce wrestler.
*Gravis injuria*, a heavy injury.
*Nigra umbra*, a black shade.
*Tristis lacryma*, a sad tear.
*Dulcis rosa*, a sweet rose.
*Ferox insula*, a fertile island.
*Justa dea*, a just goddess.
*Suavis filia*, a sweet daughter
*Nigra asina*, a black she-ass.
*Celeris mula*, a swift she-mule
*Niger talpa*, a black mole.

---

* The *Comparative* degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter. The *Superlative* is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding *ssimus*. *Excep.* If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus* to the nominative singular masculine.

RULE.—*Filia*, a daughter; *Nata*, a daughter; *Dea*, a goddess; *Anima*, the soul; *Famula*, a female servant; *Liberta*, a freedwoman; *Asina*, a she-ass; *Mula*, a she-mule; and *Equa*, a mare; have more frequently *ābus*, than *is*, in their dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension.

## NOUNS OF A GREEK ORIGIN.

*Casta Penelope*, the chaste Penelope.
*Tota epitŏmē*, the whole abridgment.
*Latus tiāras*, a broad turban.
*Pius Æneas*, the pious Æneas.
*Fortis Achātes*, the brave Achates.
*Clarus comētes*, a bright comet.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

*Carus gener*, a dear son-in-law.
*Sagax vir*, a sagacious man.
*Prūdens socer*, a prudent father-in-law.
*Procax puer*, a forward boy.
*Mollis puer*, an effeminate boy.
*Utilis liber*, a useful book.
*Fertilis ager*, a fertile field.
*Longus gladius*, a long sword.
*Crudelis tyrannus*, a cruel tyrant.
*Tristis rogus*, a sad funeral-pile.
*Rapax lupus*, a rapacious wolf.
*Mitis Zephyrus*, a mild west wind.
*Felix regnum*, a fortunate kingdom.
*Florens regnum*, a flourishing kingdom.
*Grave jugum*, a heavy yoke.
*Breve adagium*, a short proverb.
*Forte vinculum*, a strong chain.
*Felix genius*, a propitious tutelar angel.
*Felix filius*, a fortunate son.
*Clemens Deus*, a merciful God.
*Felix Albion*, happy Albion.
*Canōrus Orphĕus*, musical Orpheus.
*Velificatus Athos*, Athos sailed over.
*Vaga Delos*, wandering Delos.
*Georgĭca*, The Georgicks.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

*Miser rex*, an unhappy king.
*Pulcher*, or *formosus pavo*, a beautiful peacock.
*Sacra lex*, a sacred law.
*Gelidus Aquĭlo*, the cold north wind.
*Carus pater*, a dear father.
*Dulcis odor*, a sweet smell.
*Acer miles*, a brave soldier.
*Piger homo*, a lazy fellow.
*Pius David*, pious David.
*Bonus pecten*, a good comb.

*Aspĕra rupes*, a rugged rock.
*Fera gens*, a savage nation.
*Asper lapis*, a rough stone.
*Tenerum caput*, a tender head.
*Ligneum sedīle*, a wooden seat.

## NOUNS OF A GREEK ORIGIN.

(See Adam's Grammar, page 35.)

*Difficile ænigma*, a difficult riddle.
*Pretiosum diadēma*, a precious crown.
*Magnanimus heros*, a magnanimous hero.
*Nocturna lampas*, a night lamp.
*Clara lampus*, a clear lamp.
*Impia herĕsis*, an impious heresy.
*Misĕra Troas*, a wretched Trojan woman.
*Audax Tros*, a bold Trojan.
*Formōsa Phillis*, the fair Phillis.
*Trojanus Paris*, the Trojan Paris.
*Pulchra chlamys*, a beautiful military cloak.
*Velox Argo*, the swift Argo.
*Rex Capys*, King Capys.
*Altĕra metamorphōsis*, another metamorphose.
*Vocalis Orpheus*, the tuneful Orpheus.
*Infelix Dido*, unhappy Dido.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Novus fructus*, new fruit.
*Tener fructus*, tender fruit.
*Dulcis fructus*, sweet fruit.
*Durum cornu*, a hard horn.
*Minax cornu*, a threatening horn.
*Fortis exercitus*, a brave army.
*Capax portus*, a capacious harbour.
*Acuta acus*, a sharp needle.
*Mitis Jesus*, the meek Jesus.
*Longum veru*, a long spit.
*Gravis ictus*, a heavy stroke.
*Magnus fluctus*, a large billow.
*Fortis manus*, a strong hand
*Pulchra manus*, a fair hand.
*Mollis manus*, a soft hand.
*Tutus portus*, a secure harbour.
*Tensus arcus*, a bent bow.
*Magna domus*, a large house.
*Humilis domus*, a low house.
*Altus lacus*, a deep lake.

RULE.—Some nouns have *ŭbus* in their dative and ablative plural; *viz.* *Arcus*, a bow; *Artus*, a joint; *Lacus*, a lake: *Acus*, a needle; *Portus*, a port or harbour: *Partus*,

a birth; *Tribus*, a tribe; *Veru*, a spit; *Genu*, the knee; *Specus*, a den; and *Quercus*, an oak; but *portus*, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ĭbus*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Bona res*, a good thing.
*Tenera res*, a tender thing.
*Omnis res*, every thing.
*Res nova*, a new thing.
*Respublĭca*, the commonwealth.
*Res secundæ*, prosperity.
*Res adversæ*, adversity.
*Res aspĕræ*, difficulties.
*Brevis dies*, a short day.
*Felix dies*, a happy day.
*Vana spes*, a vain hope.
*Fallax spes*, a fallacious hope.
*Levis spes*, a light hope.
*Nulla fides*, no faith.
*Spes una*, hope alone

---

Pronouns, Adjectives, and Substantives, to be declined together.

*Hic bonus filius*, this good son.
*Hæc felix filia*, this fortunate daughter.
*Hoc molle pratum*, this soft meadow.
*Ille clarus vir*, that famous man.
*Illa magna urbs*, that great city.
*Illud ferum animal*, that wild animal.
*Ille celer equus*, that swift horse.
*Hoc tenerum caput*, this tender head.
*Illud durum sedile*, that hard seat.
*Is magnus liber*, that large book.
*Ea alta rupes*, that hard rock.
*Id utile carmen*, that useful song.
*Quis benignus deus*, what kind god.
*Quæ benigna dea*, what kind goddess.
*Quid divinum numen*, what divine deity.
*Qui beatus agricŏla*, which happy husbandman.
*Quæ utilis epitŏme*, which useful epitome.
*Quod longum iter*, which long journey.
*Aliquis magnus error*, some great error.
*Aliqua parva pars*, some small part.
*Aliquid magnum nomen*, some great name.
*Quidam clarus vir*, a certain famous man.
*Quædam casta mulier*, a certain chaste woman.
*Quoddam utile jugum*, a certain useful yoke.
*Idem parvus liber*, the same small book.
*Eădem magna regio*, the same great district.
*Idem utile calcar*, the same useful spur.

# EXERCISES UPON VERBS.

I.

*Filius amat patrem.*
*Filii amant patres.*
*Pater amatur a filio.*
*Patres amantur a filiis.*

II.

*Præceptor docet discipŭlum.*
*Præceptōres docent discipŭlos*
*Discipŭlus docetur a præceptore.*
*Discipŭli docentur a præceptoribus.*

III.

*Puer legit librum.*
*Pueri legunt libros.*
*Liber legitur a puĕro.*
*Libri leguntur a puĕris.*

IV.

*Homo audit sermōnem.*
*Homines audiunt sermōnes.*
*Sermo audītur ab homĭne.*
*Sermōnes audiuntur ab hominibus.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ne insulta misĕris.* | *Noli insultare miseris.* |
| *Ne insultes miseris.* | *Nolis insultare miseris.* |
| *Ne insultaveris miseris.* | *Cave insultes miseris.* |
| *Ne insultabis miseris.* | *Cave insultare miseris.* |

## EXERCISES UPON THE INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dicit me scribĕre,* | He says that I am writing. |
| *Dixit me scribĕre,* | He said that I was writing. |
| *Dicit me scripsisse,* | He says that I have written. |
| *Dixit me scripsisse,* | He said that I had written. |
| *Dicit me scripturum esse,* | He says that I will write. |
| *Dixit me scripturum esse,* | He said that I would write. |
| *Dicit me scripturum fuisse,* | He says that I would have written. |
| *Dixit me scripturum fuisse,* | He said that I would have written. |
| —— *te scripturum fuisse,* | —— that thou wouldest have written. |
| —— *illum scripturum fuisse,* | —— that he would have written. |
| —— *nos scripturos fuisse,* | —— that we would have written. |
| —— *vos scripturos fuisse,* | —— that you would have written. |
| —— *illos scripturos fuisse,* | —— that they would have written. |
| —— *homines scripturos fuisse,* | —— that men would have written. |
| —— *fœminas scripturas fuisse,* &c. | —— that women would have written, &c. |

## INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dicit literas scribi,* | He says that letters are writing. |
| *Dixit literas scribi,* | He said that letters were writing. |
| *Dicit literas scriptas esse,* | He says that letters are written, (finished). |
| *Dixit literas scriptas esse,* | He said that letters were written. |
| *Dicit literas scriptas fuisse,* | He says that letters have been written. |
| *Dixit literas scriptas fuisse,* | He said that letters had been written. |
| *Dicit literas scriptum iri,* or *scriptas fore.* | He says that letters will be written. |
| *Dixit literas scriptum iri,* or *scriptas fore.* | He said that letters would be written. |

*Obs.* 1. *Scriptum,* when joined with *iri* in the future infin. pass. is the former supine, and therefore not varied, whatever the accusative may be that goes before it.

*Obs.* 2. When a verb wants the supine, the future infinitive must be expressed by a periphrasis or circumlocution. This form is often used in verbs that have the supine; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Scio fore,* or *futurum esse ut scribant—ut literæ scribantur.* | I know that they will write—that letters will be written. |
| *Scio fore,* or *futurum esse ut scriberent—ut literæ scriberentur.* | I knew that they would write—that letters would be written. |
| *Scivi futurum fuisse ut scriberent—ut literæ scriberentur.* | I knew that they would have written—that letters would have been written. |

*Obs.* 3. To prevent ambiguity in the case of two accusatives, it is often necessary to change the active into the passive voice; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dico me amare patrem,* | I say that I love my father, *or* that my father loves me. |
| *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse.* | Descendant of Æacus, I say that you may conquer the Romans, *or* that the Romans may conquer you. |

# EXERCISES ON GERUNDS AND THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Mihi petendum est pacem.* | *Mihi petenda est pax.* |
| *Tempus petendi pacem.* | *Tempus petendæ pacis* |
| *Cupidus petendi pacem.* | *Cupidus petendæ pacis.* |
| *Aptus petendo pacem.* | *Aptus petendæ paci.* |
| *Venit ad petendum pacem.* | *Venit ad petendam pacem.* |
| *Rediit a petendo pacem.* | *Rediit a petendâ pace.* |

*Defessus sum ambulando.*

*Mihi scribendum est literas*, or *Scribendæ sunt literæ.*
—— *scribendum erat literas*, or *Scribendæ erant literæ.*
—— *scribendum fuit literas*, or *Scribendæ fuerunt literæ.*
—— *scribendum fuerat literas*, or *Scribendæ fuerant literæ.*
—— *scribendum erit literas*, or *Scribendæ erunt literæ.*
*Dico mihi scribendum esse literas*, or *Dico mihi scribendas est literas.*
—— *mihi scribendum fuisse literas*, or —— *mihi scribendas fuisse literas.*
—— *mihi scribendum fore literas*, or —— *mihi scribendas fore literas.*

The meaning of the Former Supine may be variously expressed.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Misit legatos petitum pacem.* | *Misit legatos qui peterent pacem.* |
| ———— *ad petendum pacem.* | ———— *pacem petituros.* |
| ———— *ad petendam pacem.* | ———— *pacem petentes.* |
| ———— *petendi pacem.* | ———— *de petendo pacem.* |
| *causâ*, or *gratiâ.* | ———— *de petendâ pace.* |
| ———— *petendæ pacis.* | ———— *de pace.* |
| *causâ*, or *gratiâ.* | ———— *petere pacem.* |
| ———— *ut peterent pacem.* | ———— *paci petendæ.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| He comes to beg aid, | *Vĕnit ut opem oret*, or *opem oraturus.* |
| He came to beg aid, | *Vēnit ut opem oraret*, or *opem oraturus.* |
| They came to beg aid, | *Venērunt opem oraturi, &c.* |

Also of the Latter Supine.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Res digna cognĭtu* | *Res digna quæ cognoscātur.* |
| ———— *cognĭtione.* | ———— *quam cognoscamus.* |
| ———— *cognosci.* | *Res facilis ad credendum.* |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I know not what | he is doing, | *Nescio quid agat.* |
| | he was doing, | ——— *ageret.* |
| | he has done, | ——— *egerit.* |
| | he had done, | ——— *egisset.* |
| | he will do, | ——— *acturus sit.* |
| | he would do, | ——— *acturus esset.* |
| | he would have done, | ——— *acturus fuerit* or *fuisset.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | *Cum* (seeing) *veniat.* |
| | | ——— *veniret.* |
| | | ——— *venerit.* |
| | | ——— *venissat.* |
| | | ——— *venturus sit.* |
| | | ——— *venturus esset.* |
| | | ——— *venturus fuerit* or *fuisset.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I doubt not but | he is writing, | *Haud dubito quin scribat.* |
| | he was writing, | ——— *scribĕret.* |
| | he has written, | ——— *scripseret.* |
| | he had written, | ——— *scripsisset.* |
| | he will write, | ——— *scripturus sit.* |
| | he would write, | ——— *scripturus esset.* |
| | he would have written, | ——— *scripturus fuerit* or *fuisset.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | *Licet moneat.* |
| | | ——— *moneret.* |
| | | ——— *monuerit.* |
| | | ——— *monuisset.* |
| | | ——— *moniturus sit.* |
| | | ——— *moniturus esset.* |
| | | ——— *moniturus fuerit* or *fuisset.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| It is doubtful where | he is, | *Dubium est ubi sit.* |
| | he was, | ——— *esset.* |
| | he has been, | ——— *fuerit.* |
| | he had been, | ——— *fuisset.* |
| | he will be, | ——— *futurus sit.* |
| | he would be, | ——— *futurus esset.* |
| | he would have been. | ——— *futurus fuerit* or *fuisset.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Nescio qualis sis.* |
| | ——— *esses.* |
| | ——— *fueris.* |
| | ——— *fuisses.* |
| | ——— *futurus sis.* |
| | ——— *futurus esses.* |
| | ——— *futurus fueris* or *fuisses.* |

In like manner, *dubĭto an, utrum audiat,* &c. &c &c

## PASSIVE IMPERSONALS.

1. An Impersonal passive may be elegantly used for any person active of the same mood and tense.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*tur*). *Tu aquam a pumice postulas, qui ipsius sitiat* (i. e. *etsi*, &c.) *Nihil molestum, quod non desidĕres* (i. e. *dummodo*, &c.)

RULE 3.—*Erras qui censeas* (i. e. *quod censes*). *Male fecit Hannibal, qui Capua hiemaverit*, (i. e. *quod hiemavit*).

| *Periphrasis.* | *Without Periphrasis.* |
|---|---|
| RULE 4.—*Sunt qui scribant.* | |
| *Non desunt qui scribant.* | *Nonnulli*, or *aliqui scribunt.* |
| *Reperiuntur qui scribant.* | |
| *Inveniuntur qui scribant.* | |
| *Habeo quod scribam.* | *Habeo scribere.* |
| *Quis est qui scribat?* | *Quis scribit?* |
| *Nemo est qui scribat.* | *Nemo scribit.* |
| *Solus*, or *unus est qui scribat.* | *Ille solus*, or *unus scribit.* |
| *Nescio quis sit qui scribat.* | *Nescio quis scribat.* |

*Scribat*, because *quis* is indefinite, and all interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, require the Subjunctive.

Notes.—*Qui sit da Tityre nobis. Nemo liber est, quis corpori servit.*

Notes to RULE 2.—1. *Quantus* and *qualis*, when they have the force of *ut tantus*, *ut talis*, require the Subjunctive. 2. *Unde* for *ut inde*; *ubi* for *ut ubi*; *quo* for *ut eo*, require the Subjunctive.

Note to RULE 4.—*Ubi* and *cur* are sometimes used instead of the relative; so *quin* after a negative clause.

## GENERAL OBSERVATION.

A present or future tense is followed by the *present* subjunctive, a past tense by the *imperfect*.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Suadet puero ut studeat,* | He advises the boy to study. |
| *Suasit puero ut studēret,* | He advised the boy to study. |
| *Sunt qui dicant,* | Some say. |
| *Erunt qui dicant,* | Some will say. |
| *Fuērunt qui dicerent,* | Some said. |

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

### *The Principal Parts are marked with an Asterisk.*

| | FIRST CONJUGATION. | | SECOND CONJUGATION. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Active.* | *Passive.* | *Active.* | *Passive.* |
| *Indic. pres. | Am-o, | Am-or, | *Doc-eo, | Doc-eor, |
| ——imperf. | Am-abam, | Am-abar, | Doc-ebam, | Doc-ebar, |
| ——future. | Am-abo, | Am-abor, | Doc-ebo, | Doc-ebor, |
| Subjunc. pres. | Am-em, | Am-er, | Doc-eam, | Doc-ear, |
| Particip. pres. | Am-ans, | | Doc-ens, | |
| Gerunds. | Am-andum, | | Doc-endum, | |

| | FIRST CONJUGATION. | | SECOND CONJUGATION. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Active.* | *Passive.* | *Active.* | *Passive.* |
| Particip. fut. pass. | | Am-andus, | | Doc-endus, |
| *Infinit. pres. | Am-are, | Am-ari, | *Doc-ere, | Doc-eri, |
| Subjunc. imperf. | Am-arem, | Am-arer, | Doc-erem, | Doc-erer |
| Imperat pres. | Am-a, | Am-are, | Doc-e, | Doc-ere, |
| *Indic. perf. | Amav-i, | | *Docu-i, | |
| Indic pluperf. | Amav-eram, | | Docu-eram, | |
| Subjunc. perf. | Amav-erim, | | Docu-erim, | |
| ——pluperf. | Amav-issem, | | Docu-issem, | |
| ——future. | Amav-ero, | | Docu-ero, | |
| Infinit. perf. | Amav-isse, | | Docu-isse, | |
| Former supine, | Amat-um, | | *Doct-um, | |
| Latter——, | Amat-u, | | Doct-u, | |
| Particip. fut. act. | Amat-urus, | | Doct-urus. | |
| Particip. perf. pass. | | Amat-us, | | Doct-us. |

| | THIRD CONJUGATION. | | FOURTH CONJUGATION. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Indic. pres. | Leg-o, | Leg-or, | *Aud-io, | Aud-ior, |
| ——imperf. | Leg-ebam, | Leg-ebar, | Aud-iebam, | Aud-iebar, |
| ——future. | Leg-am, | Leg-ar, | Aud-iam, | Aud-iar, |
| Subjunc. pres. | Leg-am, | Leg-ar, | Aud-iam, | Aud-iar, |
| Particip. pres. | Leg-ens, | | Aud-iens, | |
| Gerunds, | Leg-endum, | | Aud-iendum, | |
| Particip. fut. pass. | | Leg-endus, | | Aud-iendus, |
| *Infinit. pres. | Leg-ere, | Leg-eri, | *Aud-ire, | Aud-iri, |
| Subjunc. imperf. | Leg-erem, | Leg-erer, | Aud-irem, | Aud-irer, |
| Imperat. pres. | Leg-e, | Leg-ere, | Aud-i, | Aud-ire, |
| *Indic. perf. | Leg-i, | | *Audiv-i, | |
| ——pluperf. | Leg-eram, | | Audiv-eram, | |
| Subjunc. perf. | Leg-erim, | | Audiv-erim, | |
| ——pluperf. | Leg-issem, | | Audiv-issem, | |
| ——fut. | Leg-ero, | | Audiv-ero, | |
| Infinit. perf. | Leg-isse, | | Audiv-isse, | |
| *Former supine, | Lect-um, | | *Audit-um, | |
| Latter——, | Lect-u, | | Audit-u, | |
| Particip. fut. act. | Lect-urus, | | Audit-urus, | |
| ——perf. pass. | | Lect-us, | | Audit-us. |

## AN EXEMPLIFICATION OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

### *Present Tense.*

I praise thee, Thou art praised by me. Thou desirest wisdom, Wisdom is desired by thee. God governs the world, The world

*Ego laudare tu, Tu laudare a ego.—Tu expetere sapientia, Sapientia expeti a tu.—Deus gubernare mundus Mundus gubernari a Deus* —

| | |
|---|---|
| is governed by God. | *Ego scribĕre literæ, Literæ scribi a ego.—* |
| We write letters, Letters are written by us. | |
| You get riches, Riches are gotten by you. | *Tu parare divitiæ, Divitiæ parari a tu.—* |
| All men blame ungrateful persons, The ungrateful are blamed by all. | *Omnis culpare ingrati, Ingrati culpari ab omnis.* |

## DEPONENT VERBS.

| | |
|---|---|
| I confess. Thou deservest praise. | *Ego fateri. Tu mereri laus.* |
| The sun rises. | *Sol oriri.* |
| We agree to thee. | *Ego assentiri tu.* |
| You forget injuries. | *Tu oblivisci injuria* |
| Men die. | *Homò mori.* |

*Obs.* Through the whole of the Indicative mood the scholar should turn the examples into questions; first in English, by putting the sign of the verb before the Nominative case; and then in Latin, by putting *An* or *Num* before the first word, or *Ne* after it; likewise putting *Annon* or *Nonne* first, where there is *Not* in the English.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

It refers to a certain past time, signifying a thing which was then doing, or present and unfinished. Or it speaks of a thing as present at some certain time past.

| | |
|---|---|
| I wrote (did write) letters then, Letters were then written by me.— | *Ego tunc scribĕre literæ, Literæ tunc scribi a ego.* |
| At what time thou soughtest for me, I was sought for by thee.— | *Quo tempore tu quærĕre ego, Ego quæri a tu.* |
| When Numa held the kingdom, When the kingdom was held by Numa. | *Ubi Numa obtinēre regnum, Ubi regnum obtineri a Numa.* |
| At that age we gave our minds (endeavour) to learning; | *Ego isthuc ætatis dăre operæ literæ;* |
| You always gave your minds to play. | *Tu semper dăre opera lusus.* |
| While the fields did flourish. | *Dum arvum florēre.* |

## DEPONENTS.

| | |
|---|---|
| I was glad, so long as thou didst follow virtue; and so long as he reverenced his parents. | *Ego lætari, donec tu sectari virtus; et donec ille reverēri parens suus.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Whilst we hunted hares, you followed, they talked in the mean time. | *Dum ego venari lepus, tu sequi, ille fabulari interea.* |

## PERFECT TENSE.

It speaks of a thing as now past, and is either Definite or Indefinite.

1. The *Perfect Definite* respects a certain past time, and speaks of a thing which happened and was finished or completed then.

| | |
|---|---|
| I sought (did seek) for thee yesterday, Thou wert sought for by me yesterday. | *Ego quærĕre tu heri, Tu quæsitus esse a ego heri.* |
| Thou didst well, It was well done by thee. | *Benefacĕre, Benefactus esse a tu.* |
| God created the world, The world was created by God out of nothing. | *Deus creare mundus, Mundus creatus esse a Deus ex nihilo.* |
| Pompey got great praise. We went away presently. You saw it. They did not believe these things, These things were not credited by them. | *Pompeius adeptus esse laus magnus. Ego statim abīre. Tu vidēre. Ille non credĕre hoc, Hoc non creditus esse ab ille.* |

2. The *Perfect Indefinite* either speaks of a thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular time that it happened at.

| | |
|---|---|
| I have often sought for thee, Thou hast often been sought for by me. | *Sæpe quærĕre tu, Tu sæpe quæsitus esse a ego.* |
| Thou has spoken well, and hast deserved praise. | *Tu locutus esse bene, et meritus esse laus.* |
| She has found her parents. We have made trial, Trial has been made by us. | *Illa reperīre parens. Facĕre periculum. Periculum factus esse a ego,* |
| You have kept your promise, (Your) promise has been kept by you. | *Tu solvĕre fides, Fides solutus esse a tu.* |
| All men have sinned, and have deserved punishment. | *Omnis peccare, et meritus esse pœnæ.* |

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

It refers to some former time, and speaks of a thing which happened before, and was past then.

| | |
|---|---|
| I had sought for thee before, Thou hadst been sought for by me before. Thou hadst promised the day before. | *Quærĕre tu antea, Tu quæsitus esse a ego antea. Tu promittĕre pridie.* |
| The master had often forbidden that, That had often been forbidden by the master. | *Magister sæpe prohibēre id, Id sæpe prohibitus esse a magister.* |
| We had dined long before. You had asked. | *Prandēre multo ante. Tu rogare.* |
| Their fathers had taken care of that, That had been taken care of by their fathers. | *Pater curare id, Id curatus esse a pater.* |

## FUTURE TENSE.

1. Importing *will* or *purpose*. The first person has the sign *will*, the rest *shall*.

| | |
|---|---|
| I will write letters, Letters shall be written by me. | *Scribĕre literæ, Literæ scribi a ego.* |
| Thou shalt hear the whole matter. | *Audīre res omnis.* |
| He shall suffer punishment. Punishment shall be suffered by him. | *Ille dăre pœnæ, Pœnæ dăre ab ille.* |
| We will do our endeavour, Endeavour shall be used by us. | *Ego dăre opera, Opera dări a ego.* |
| You shall know, | *Tu scīre.* |
| The boys shall play | *Pueri ludĕre.* |

## IMPERATIVELY.

| | |
|---|---|
| Thou shalt worship God, reverence thy parents, and shalt imitate the good. | *Venerari Deus, reverēri parens, et imitari bonus.* |
| Thou shalt beware of passionateness, govern thy tongue and follow peace, neither shalt thou do injury to any one. | *Cavēre iracundia, moderari lingua, et colĕre pax, neque facĕre injuria quisquam.* |
| We shall use diligence. | *Adhibēre diligentia.* |

2. Signifying bare future event. The first person has the sign *shall*, the rest *will*.

| | |
|---|---|
| I shall see. Thou wilt oblige him. He will give thanks to thee, Thanks will be given to thee by him. | *Ego vidēre. Facere ille gratum. Agĕre gratia tu, Gratiæ agi tu ab ille.* |
| We shall obtain leave, Leave will be obtained by us. | *Impetrare venia, Venia impetrari a ego.* |
| You will get (make) an estate. They will get friends, Friends will be gotten by them. | *Tu facĕre res. Ille invenīre amicus, Amīcus, inveniri ab ille.* |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|---|---|
| Learn thou good arts, Let good arts be learned by thee. Shun thou sloth. Let the victor have a horse. Beware you of passionateness. | *Discĕre bonus ars, Bonus ars disci a tu. Fugĕre segnities. Victor habēre equus. Cavēre tu iracundia.* |
| Call ye me. Let scholars obey their masters. Let them suffer themselves to be taught. | *Vocare me. Discipulus magister parēre. Docēri sui pati.* |

The Present Subjunctive is often used instead of this mood, especially in forbidding after *ne*, *nemo*, *nullus*, &c.

| | |
|---|---|
| Try that, which thou canst (do). | *Quod posse, id tentare.* |
| Love a parent if he is kind, if otherwise, bear (him). | *Amare parens, si æquus esse ; si aliter, ferre.* |
| Don't thou covet other men's goods. | *Ne concupiscĕre alienum.* |
| Do not thou injury to any one. | *Ne facĕre injuria quisquam.* |
| Do not hurt any one. | *Ne cui nocēre.* |
| Give not up thyself to laziness. | *Ne tradĕre tu socordia.* |
| Give not yourselves wholly to pleasures ; but rather give yourselves to learning. | *Ne dedĕre tu totus voluptas ; quin potius doctrinæ tu dedĕre.* |

## ALSO THE FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Remember thou. See thou to it. Don't say it. Do not | *Tu meminisse. Tu vidēre. Ne dicĕre. Ne facĕre injuria.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| thou do injury. Make not haste to speak. Deride nobody. Give not up thyself to idleness. Let him look to it. | *Ne festīnaire loqui.* *Nemo irredēre.* *Ne tradĕre in ignavia.* *Ille vidēre.* |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

This Mood has always before it another verb in the same sentence, as also some Conjunction, Adverb, Indefinite or Relative expressed or understood.

### PRESENT TENSE.

1. With some Conjunction, Adverb, Indefinite, or Relative, expressed; englished generally as the Indicative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Seeing I am in health. | *Cum valēre.* |
| Have a care what thou doest; What is done by thee. | *Vidēre quid agĕre.* *Quid agi a tu.* |
| There is no covetous man who does not want. | *Nemo avarus esse, qui non egēre.* |
| Stay till we return. You do not know for whom you get money; For whom money is gotten by you. Seeing covetous men always want, though they abound. | *Expectare dum redīre. Nescīre, qui parāre pecunia; Qui pecunia parari a tu. Cum avarus semper egēre, etiamsi abundare.* |
| I wish I may become a scholar. I wish thou mayst recover. I wish the king may live long. | *Utinam evadĕre doctus.* *Utinam tu convalescĕre.* *Utinam rex vivĕre diu.* |

2. Without any Verb and Conjunction expressed. The signs are May, Can, Let, Should, Would.

| | |
|---|---|
| By this means thou may get praise; Praise may be gotten by thee. Thou canst scarce find a faithful friend; | *Ita invenīre laus;* *Laus invenīri a tu.* *Vix reperīre amicus fidelis;* |
| A faithful friend can scarce be found by thee. Somebody may say. Let us live piously. | *Amicus fidelis vix reperiri a tu. Aliquis dicĕre.* *Vivĕre pie.* |
| I should refuse. She should pray for help. | *Recusāre. Orāre opis.* |

### INTERROGATIVELY.

| | |
|---|---|
| Should I tell it? What should I think? Whom | *Narrāre? Quid putāre? Quem rogare?* |

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

| | |
|---|---|
| turned. I wish I were in health. | *Utinam valĕre.* |
| I wish thou spokest from thy heart. | *Utinam tu loqui ex ănimus.* |
| I wish we were wise enough. | *Utinam sapĕre sătis.* |
| I wish you used diligence; I wish diligence was used by you. | *Utinam tu adhibēre diligentia; Utinam diligentia adhiberi a tu.* |

2 With the signs Would, Could, Should, Might, either with or without Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c.

| | |
|---|---|
| I would take care. He begged that I would come. | *Curāre. Orare ut venire.* |
| Thou wouldst think thyself happy, if thou wert rich. | *Putare tu felix, si esse dives.* |
| He might say; It might be said by him. | *Dicĕre; Dici ab ille.* |
| The day would fail me, if I should reckon every one. | *Dies deficĕre ego, si enumerare omnia.* |
| We should not suffer it. | *Non sinĕre.* |
| You would learn willingly, if you were wise. | *Discĕre libenter, si sapĕre.* |
| Men would follow virtue, if they were wise. | *Homo sectari virtus, si sapĕre.* |

INTERROGATIVELY.

| | |
|---|---|
| What should I do? | *Quid facĕre* |
| Wouldst not thou think thyself happy? | *Nonne putare tu felix?* |
| Might not (would not) he say? | *Nonne dicĕre?* |
| What would he say? | *Quid dicĕre?* |
| Should we not do it? | *Annon facĕre?* |
| Would you suffer it? | *Num sinĕre?* |
| Would they believe? | *An credĕre?* |

PERFECT, DEFINITE.

1. With Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. englished as the Indicative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Though I sought for thee yesterday; | *Licet quæĕrre tu heri;* |
| Though thou wert sought for by me yesterday. | *Licet quæsitus esse a ego heri.* |
| I do not knew whether you went. | *Nescīre quo profectus esse.* |
| Who can doubt but God created the world? | *Quis dubitare, quin Deus creare mundus?* |
| But the world was created by God? | *Quin mundus creatus esse a Deus?* |
| You know how great praise we got. | *Scīre, quantus laus adeptus esse.* |
| Though many did not be- | *Quanquam multi non credĕre* |

| | |
|---|---|
| lieve these things; Though these things were not believed by many. | *hoc; Quanquam hoc non creditus esse a multus.* |
| I wish I satisfied the master. I wish thou spokest the truth. | *Utinam satisfacere præceptor. Utinam dicĕre verum.* |

2. Without a Conjunction, the sign is Might.

| | |
|---|---|
| Perhaps I might be in an error. | *Errare fortasse.* |
| Perhaps I might add more kind expressions. | *Forsitan addĕre blanditiæ plures.* |
| Perhaps the Sabine (woman) might be unwilling. | *Forsitan Sabina nolle.* |
| Perhaps Ulysses might keep his wife's birth-day. | *Ulysses agĕre forsan dies natalis conjux.* |

## PERFECT, INDEFINITE.

1. With Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. englished as the Indicative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Though I have made trial; Though trial has been made by me. | *Etiamsi facĕre periculum; Etiamsi periculum factus esse a ego.* |
| Tell me what you have got. | *Dicĕre mihi, quid nactus esse.* |
| I know the man who has promised. | *Nôsse homo, qui promittĕre.* |
| Seeing we all have sinned. | *Cum omnis peccare.* |
| I am glad that you have escaped. | *Gaudēre, quòd evadēre.* |
| I desire to know, what they have done; | *Avĕre scire, quid agĕre;* |
| What has been done by them. | *Quid actus esse ab ille.* |
| I wish he hath spoken the truth; | *Utinam dicĕre verum;* |
| Truth hath been spoken by him. | *Verum dictus esse ab ille.* |
| I wish he has (may have) obtained leave. | *Utinam ille imvetrare venia.* |

2. With the signs *may have, should have*

| | |
|---|---|
| That he may not have lost, the gamester does not cease to lose. | *Ne non perdĕre, non cessare perdĕre lusor.* |
| Then I should have saved the Capitol in vain. | *Tunc ego nequicquam Capitolium servare.* |
| Thou fearest lest I should not have received thy epistle; | *Vereri, ut accipĕre tua epistola;* |
| Lest thy epistle should not have been received by me. | *Ut tua epistola acceptus esse a ego.* |
| I am afraid, lest he should have taken it ill. | *Vereri, ne illud gravius ferre.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| I fear lest I should have taken pains in vain; Lest thou shouldst have exceeded moderation; Lest she should have heard these things. | *Metuĕre, ne frustra suscipĕre labor; Ne excedĕre modus;* *Ne illa hæc audire.* |

3. This Perfect of the Subjunctive sometimes inclines very much to a future signification. The signs are, *should, would, could, may, can.*

| | |
|---|---|
| I should choose rather to be poor. I would not do it without your order. Thou wouldst choose rather to be in health, than to be rich. Who would say that the covetous man is rich? You would play more willingly than study. | *Optare pauper esse potius.* *Non facĕre injussu tuus.* *Præferre valēre, quam dives esse.* *Quis dicĕre avarus esse dives?* *Ludĕre libentius quam studēre.* |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

1. With Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. englished as the Indicative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Because I had received a kindness; Because a kindness had been received by me. | *Quòd accipĕre beneficium;* *Quòd beneficium acceptus esse a ego.* |
| If thou hadst restrained thy passion; If passion had been restrained by thee. | *Si cohibēre iracundia;* *Si iracundia cohibitus esse a tu.* |
| He who had offered injury; By whom injury had been offered. | *Ille qui inferre injuria;* *A qui injuria illatus esse.* |
| If they had kept promise. | *Si servare promissum.* |
| I did not know whether he had thanked him or not. | *Nescire an agĕre gratia ille necne.* |
| I wish I had obeyed. I wish you had made trial. | *Utinam parēre. Utinam facĕre periculum.* |

2. With the signs, *might have, would have, could have, should have, ought to have,* and *had* for *would* or *should have.*

| | |
|---|---|
| If he had (should have) commanded it, I would have obeyed. | *Si jubēre, parēre.* |
| Thou shouldest (oughtest to) have called me. | *Vocare.* |
| Cæsar would never have done this, nor suffered | *Cæsar nunquam hoc facĕre, neque passus esse* |

| | |
|---|---|
| it. We could not have escaped this mischief. | *Non effugĕre hoc malum.* |

INTERROGATIVELY.

| | |
|---|---|
| Wouldst thou have obeyed? | *An parēre?* |
| Wouldst thou not have obeyed? | *Annon (nonne) parere?* |
| Would Cæsar have done or suffered this? | *An Cæsar hoc facĕre aut passus esse?* |
| Would not Cæsar have suffered this? | *Nonne Cæsar hoc passus esse?* |
| Who would have done this? | *Quis hoc facĕre?* |
| Could we have escaped. | *An effugĕre.* |

3. There is a peculiar use of this Pluperfect of the Subjunctive, when a thing is signified future at a certain past time referred to.

| | |
|---|---|
| Thou promisedst thou wouldst write, if I desired (should desire) it. | *Promittĕre tu scripturus (esse) si rogare.* |
| Thou saidst thou wouldst come, if thou didst (shouldst) obtain leave. | *Dicĕre tu venturus esse, si impetrare venia.* |
| They decreed a reward if any one should discover. | *Decernĕre præmium, si quis indicare.* |

Examples of this kind are usual in recitals of Laws, Speeches and Predictions; the future tense in the Law, Speech, or Prediction being in the recital expressed by the Pluperfect, which is to the future as the imperfect is to the present.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Fut.* If any one shall make bad verses against any one, there is law. | *Si malus condĕre in quisquis carmen, jus esse.* |
| *Pluperf.* The twelve tables made it capital, if any one should compose verses which brought infamy to another. | *Duodecim tabula capite sancire, si quis carmen condĕre qui infamia afferre alter.* |
| *Fut.* They promise, that they will do what he commands (shall command). | *Quæ imperare, sui facturus (esse) polliceri.* |
| *Pluperf.* They promised that they would do what he commanded (should command). | *Quæ imperare sui facturus (esse) polliceri.* |

## FUTURE TENSE.

1. With Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. the sign is *shall have*; but generally the *have* or the *shall*, and frequently both, are omitted.

| | |
|---|---|
| When I (shall) have determined, I will write. | *Cum constituĕre, scribĕre.* |
| When you (shall) have said all. | *Cum dicĕre omnia.* |
| After he has spoken with Cæsar. | *Postquam convenire Cæsar.* |
| When we (shall) have written letters; | *Ubi scribĕre literæ;* |
| When letters (shall) have been written by us. | *Ubi literæ scriptus esse a ego.* |
| When you (shall) have performed your promises; | *Cum præstare promissum;* |
| When promises shall have been (are) performed by you. | *Cum promissum præstitus esse a tu.* |
| As soon as they (shall) have heard. | *Cum primum (simul ac) audir.* |
| If I (shall) ask. | *Si rogare.* |
| If thou shalt obtain (obtainest). | *Si impetrare.* |
| If any one (shall) discover. | *Si quis indicare.* |
| If we (shall) do that. | *Si id facĕre.* |
| If you (shall) make me consul. | *Si facĕre ego consul.* |
| Unless they (shall) come tomorrow. | *Nisi cras venire.* |

2. Without Conjunctions, &c. the sign to the first person is *shall*, to the rest *will*.

| | |
|---|---|
| I shall see. | *Ego vidēre.* |
| Thou wilt do kindly, if thou wilt come. | *Facĕre benignè, si venire.* |
| A covetous man will always want. | *Avarus semper egēre.* |
| We shall obtain. | *Impetrare.* |
| You will conquer. | *Vincĕre.* |
| They will get friends. | *Ille invenire amicus.* |

Note. The Participle in *rus* with *sim* and *essem* is often used instead of the *Future Subjunctive* or *Pluperfect*, viz. with such Indefinites as are sometimes also Interrogatives; and with the Conjunctions *cum*, *quin*, *quòd*, *quia*, *quò*, *ut*.

# AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX.

---

SYNTAX is the right ordering of words in speech.

Its parts are *two*, *concord* and *government*.

*Concord* is when one word agrees with another in some accidents.

*Government* is when a word governs a certain case.

---

## *I. OF CONCORD.*

CONCORD is fourfold.

1. Of an adjective with a substantive.
2. Of a verb with a nominative.
3. Of a relative with an antecedent.
4. Of a substantive with a substantive.

### *RULE I.*

AN ADJECTIVE agrees with a substantive, in gender, number, and case.

| | |
|---|---|
| Fleeting years slide away. | *Fugaces anni labuntur.* |
| Sluggish old age approaches. | *Tarda senectus subit.* |
| Time past never returns. | *Tempus praeteritum nunquam revertitur.* |
| We all hasten to one end. | *Nos omnes metam properamus ad unam.* |

*Note* 1. The substantive is sometimes understood; and in this case the adjective takes the gender of the suppressed substantive; as, *per immortales*; sc. *Deos*. *Laborare tertiana*; sup. *febri*. *Paucis te volo*; nempe *verbis*. *Tristre lupus stabulis*; sup. *negotium*. *Omnia senescunt*; sup. *negotia*. This last substantive is seldom expressed; and its usual sign in English is the word *thing* or *things*.

*Note* 2. Adjectives are often put substantively, or used in a substantive sense; and may then have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, Virg. *Fortunate senex*. Cic. *Amicus certus*. And sometimes substantives seem to be used in an adjective sense; as, Virg. *Populum late regem*, for *regnantem*. Cic. *Victor exercitus*. Ovid. *Dardanides matres*.

*Note* 3. An adjective joined with two substantives of different genders, generally agrees with that chiefly or principally spoken of; as, Plin. *Oppidum Paestum, Graecis Posidonia appellatum*. The adjective, however, sometimes neglecting the principal substantive, agrees with the nearest; as, Cic. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. But if the principal substantive be the proper name of a man or woman, the adjective always agrees with it; as, Vopisc. *Bonosus Imperator amphora dictus est*; not *dicta*. Just. *Semiramis puer esse credita est*; not *creditus*.

The good boy learns, the naughty boys play; the swift horse conquers, the slow horses are overcome.

*Bonus puer disco, malus puer ludo; celer equus vinco, tardus equus vinco*

Proud men do fall, but humble men shall be exalted; high towers fall, whilst low cottages stand.

*Superbus homo cado, sed modestus homo proveho; altus turris cado, dum humilis casa sto.*

Our master comes, let us read, the idle boys shall be beaten, my books were torn, thy brothers were commended.

*Noster praeceptor venio, lego ego, ignavus puer caedo, meus liber lacero, tuus frater laudo.*

*Note* 1. We always rush upon a thing forbidden, and we covet things denied. Let us despise earthly things, when we contemplate heavenly things.

*Nitor in vetitus semper, cupioque negatus. Contemno humanus, cum specto coelestis.*

¶ A small spark neglected, often raises a great conflagration; so after Sylla had settled the commonwealth, new wars broke out.

*Parvus scintilla contemptus, saepe excito magnum incendium; sic cum Sylla compono respublica, novus bellum exardeo.*

The general triumphed most splendidly in a golden chariot with his sons; two princes were led before his chariot; many kings came to this sight.

*Imperator triumpho magnificenter in aureus currus cum filius suus; duo princeps duco ante currus; multus rex venio ad hic spectaculum.*

Cæsar returning from Gaul began to demand another consulship; but he was ordered to disband his army and return to town; for which injury he came from Ariminum, where he had his soldiers drawn together, against his country with an army. Cæsar prevailed: he was afterwards murdered. Death devours all things.

*Cæsar, rediens e Gallia, coepi deposco alter consulatus; sed jubeo dimitto exercitus et redeo ad urbs; propter qui injuria venio ab Ariminum, ubi habeo miles congregatus, adversum patria cum exercitus. Cæsar vinco: postea interficio. Mors devoro omnis.*

Diligence overcomes all difficulties. Delays often ruin the best designs. Shame attends unlawful pleasures. One bad sheep infects a whole flock.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

The dog barks, the sheep did bleat, the hog hath grunted, the horses had neighed, asses will bray, let lions roar, oxen will bellow, wolves will howl.

*Canis latro, ovis balo, sus grunnio, equus hinnio, asinus rudo, leo rugio, bos mugio, lupus ululo.*

Virtue is praised, vice was shunned, honour was sought, riches were acquired, the boys will learn, let books be bought, Peter affirms, who will deny?

*Vurtus laudo, vitium vito, honos quaero, divitiae paro, puer disco, emo liber, Petus affirmo, quis nego?*

The men did shout, the battle was joined, the arrows fly, the swords are drawn, the soldiers have fought, the horses are taken, the enemy will be routed, let victory come, peace will be sought.

*Homo clamo, praelium committo, sagitta volo, gladius destringo, milesp ugno, equus capio, hostis fugo, venio victoria, pax peto.*

¶ In the mean time, all Greece being divided into two parties, turned their arms from foreign wars, as it were upon their own bowels; wherefore two bodies are made out of one people, and the soldiers are divided into two hostile armies.

*Interea omnis Graecia, divisus in duo pars, converto arma ab externus bellum, velut in viscus suus; igitur duo corpus fio de unus populus, et miles divido in duo hostilis exercitus.*

After the battle, no woman lamented her lost husband; all lamented their own hap, because they had not fallen for their country; all received the wounded, dressed their wounds, refreshed the fatigued, and they all more lamented the public than their private fortune. For these things they deserve praise.

*Post praelium nullus mulier fleo amissus conjux; omnis doleo suus vicis, quod ipse non cado pro patria; omnis excipio saucius, curo vulnus, reficio lassus, omnisque magis lugeo publicus quam privatus fortuna. Ob hic mereor laus.*

God made the world, and all things in it; he created the light, and formed darkness; in him we live and move; if he look on the earth, it trembles; if he touch the hills, they smoke; I will bless my God while I live; he alone doth wondrous works, praise ye the Lord.

ANNOTATIONS.

3. Substantive verbs, verbs of naming and gesture, have a nominative both before and after them belonging to the same thing.

| | |
|---|---|
| I am a scholar. | *Ego sum discipulus.* |
| Thou wilt become a poet. | *Tu fies poëta.* |
| Diogenes was called a philosopher. | *Diogenes appellabatur philosophus.* |
| We are esteemed wise men. | *Nos existimamur sapientes.* |
| She walks as a queen. | *Illa incedit regina* |
| The soldiers sleep secure. | *Milites dormiunt securi* |

1. Substantive verbs are *sum, fio, forem,* and *existo.*

2. Verbs of naming are these passives, *appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor;* to which add *videor, existimor, censeor, habeor, creor, constitutor, salutor, designor, cognoscor, agnoscor, invenior, reperior,* &c.

3. Verbs of gesture are, *eo, incedo, venio, cubo, sto, jaceo, sedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, somnio, maneo,* &c.

*Note* 1. The nominative, after these verbs is frequently an adjective, which agrees with the nominative before them as its substantive, in gender, number, and case, or some other substantive is understood.

*Note* 2. Any verb may have a nominative after it, when it belongs to the same thing with the nominative before it; as, Cic. *Adivi hoc puer.* Id. *Sapiens nihil facit invitus.*

*Note* 3. When a verb comes betwixt two nominatives of different numbers, it usually takes the number of the first; as, Ter. *Dos est decem talenta.* Ovid. *Ossa lapis fiunt.* But sometimes it takes the number of the last; as, Ter. *Amantium irae amoris integratio est.* Luc. *Sanguis erant lachrymae.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. The lion is king among the wild beasts, the ash is the fairest tree in the woods, and the fir in the lofty mountains. | *Leo sum rex inter fera, fraxinus sum pulcher arbos in sylva, et abies in altus mons.* |
| Patience often offended becomes fury, and generals after victory are sometimes tyrants. | *Patientia saepe laesus fio furor, et dux ex victoria interdum existo tyrannus.* |
| 2. Virtue is often called vice, vice too is often called virtue, and poverty is sometimes reckoned a disgrace. | *Virtus saepe voco vitium, victium quoque saepe appello virtus, et paupertas nonnunquam censeo opprobrium.* |
| Varro was esteemed a learned man, Cicero was accounted eloquent, Aristides was called just, Pompey was named great. | *Varro existimo doctus vir, Cicero habeo disertus, Aristides dico justus, Pompeius nomino magnus.* |
| 3. The boy sits porter before the gate, the servants walk on foot, the master stays alone, the soldiers come up in arms. | *Puer sedeo janitor ante fores, famulus incedo pedes, herus maneo solus, miles, venio armatus.* |

Beauty is a fair but fading flower Virtue is its own reward, and envy is its own punishment. Religion is the greatest wisdom, honesty is the best policy, and temperance is the best physic.

Quarrelsome persons are mischievous companions. A false friend will be the most dangerous enemy. Fraud in childhood will become knavery in manhood.

The spring is a plesant time, for nature then seems to be renewed, the trees begin to sprout, and the gardens bring forth herbs and flowers; these are all sweet things.

## 4. The infinitive mood has an accusative before it.

| | |
|---|---|
| I am glad that you are well. | *Gaudeo te valere.* |
| I confess that I have sinned. | *Fatero me peccasse.* |

*Note* 1. The word *that* betwixt two English verbs is the usual sign of this construction.

*Note* 2. The accusative may be turned into the nominative with *quod* or *ut*. Thus, instead of *gaudeo te valere*, we may say, *gaudeo quod tu valeas;* and instead of *opus est te scire*, we may say, *opus est ut scias.*

*Note* 3. The accusatives *me, te, se, illum*, as also the infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, are frequently suppressed; as, Virg. *Reddere posse negabat*, sc. *se posse.* Cic. *Exercitum caesum cognovi*, sc. *fuisse caesum.*

| | |
|---|---|
| I wonder that your brother does not write to me; I cannot believe that he is well. | *Miror tuus frater non scribo ad ego; non possum credo is valeo.* |
| Silius boasted that his soldiers had persisted in obedience, when others had lapsed into sedition. | *Silius jacto suus miles duro in obsequium, cum alius prolabor ad seditio.* |
| When Cæsar heard that the Helvetii were in arms, and that they designed to make their way through his province, he made haste to be gone from Rome, and come very speedily to Geneva. | *Cum Caesar audio Helvetii sum in arma, et is statuo facio iter per provincia suus, maturo proficiscor a Roma, et venio celeriter ad Geneva.* |
| The ambassadors complained that they were slighted, and took it ill that they were ordered to depart from the city; but the king declared that he would reckon them for enemies, unless they went off at the day appointed. | *Legatus queror sui negligo, et aegre fero sui jubeo discedo ab urbs; at rex denuncio sui habeo is pro hostis, nisi proficiscor ad dies statutus.* |
| Historians tell, that Philip was slain by a young man, as he was going to the public games, and many believed that Alexander had encouraged him to so great a crime. The young man was called Pausanias. | *Historicus narro, Philippus obtrunco ab adolescens, cum eo, ad ludus, publicus, et multus credo Alexander impello is ad tantus facinus. Adolescen voco Pausanias.* |

Young men hope that they shall live long; but they ought to remember, that they were sent into this world as into a lodging, not as into a home, and that they will soon be called hence.

While Cæsar was in Hither Gaul, in winter-quarters, frequent reports were brought to him, that all the Belgæ had conspired against the Roman people.

## 5. ESSE hath the same case after it that it hath before it

### Or more generally thus:

The infinitive of a substantive verb, verb of naming or gesture, takes the same case after it that it hath before it.

| | |
|---|---|
| Peter desires to be a learned man. | *Petrus cupit esse vir doctus.* |
| Thou lovest to be called father. | *Tu amas dici pater.* |
| He would have himself made general. | *Vult se creari ducem* |
| We see that the old man walks straight. | *Videmus senem incedere rectum.* |

*Note* 1. The noun after these infinitives is frequently an adjective, which either agrees with the substantive before them, or has some other substantive understood.

*Note* 2. When a verb that governs the dative, such as *licet*, *expedit*, *datur*, *concedo*, and the like, comes before these infinitives, the case after them is commonly the dative, but sometimes the accusative; as, *Non datur omnibus esse nobilibus et opulentis; sed licet omnibus esse bonis, si velint.* Ter. *Expedit vobis esse bonos.* Cic. *Liceat esse miseros.* Which may be supplied thus; *Expedit vobis vos esse bonos. Liceat vobis vos esse miseros.*

*Note* 3. When a verb that governs the accusative, such as, *aio*, *refero*, *puto*, *nescio*, and the like, comes before the infinitive *esse*, the case after it, in prose authors, is always the accusative; but the Poets, sometimes, in imitation of the Greeks, omitting the pronoun *me*, *te*, or *se*, use the nominative; as, Ovid. *Quid retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronepos.* Hor. *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis.* Id. *Patiens vocari Cæsaris ultor.* And Virg. *Sensit medios delapsus in hostes;* i. e. *Sensit esse delapsus*, instead of *sensit se esse delapsum.*

*Note* 4. This rule respects only the nominative, dative, and accusative, and is not to be extended to the genitive or ablative; for we do not say, *Interest Ciceronis esse eloquentis;* but, *Interest Ciceronis esse eloquentem.*

| | |
|---|---|
| The old Persians believed that the sun was God. | *Vetus Persa credo sol sum Deus.* |
| The Nymph complained that her arms were become long boughs. | *Nympha doleo suus brachium fio longus ramus.* |
| If thou desirest to be a good man, practice charity and other virtues. | *Si tu volo sum bonus vir, colo caritas aliusque virtus.* |
| Empedocles affected to be esteemed an immortal god. | *Empedocles cupio habeo immortalis deus.* |
| No man ought to be called happy before death. | *Nemo debeo dico beatus ante obitus.* |
| Thou art become an old wife, yet thou affectest to be thought a beauty. | *Tu fio anus, tamen volo video formosus.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Antigonus orders himself to be called king by the people, Ptolemy also is styled king by the army. | *Antigonus jubeo sui appello rex a populus, Ptolemaeus quoque cognomino rex ab exercitus.* |
| Such a stupidity seized Vitellius, that, if others had not remembered that he was emperor, he himself would have forgot. | *Tantus torpedo invado Vitellius, ut, si caeter non memini is sum princeps, ipse obliviscor.* |

If you would be happy, fear God, and live according to nature.

A wise man may be thought to be a fool, if he talk too much; and a fool may be esteemed a wise man, if he hold his tongue. A man is known by his talk, and silence is often great prudence.

---

## *RULE III.*

6. THE RELATIVE *qui, quae, quod,* agrees with the antecedent in gender and number.

| | |
|---|---|
| The man is wise who speaks little. | *Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur.* |

ANNOTATIONS.

7. If no nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be the nominative to the verb.

| | |
|---|---|
| The covetous man, who always wants, cannot be rich. | *Avarus, qui semper eget, non potest esse dives.* |

8. But if a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

| | |
|---|---|
| God, who governs the world, and by whom all things were created, is a spirit, whom no man hath seen, or can see. | *Deus, qui gubernat mundum, et a quo omnia creabantur, est spiritus, quem nemo vidit, aut videre potest.* |

*Note* 1. The antecedent is commonly some substantive noun, either expressed or understood, that goes before the relative, and is again understood to, or sometimes repeated along with the relative as its substantive; as, *cave voluptatem, quae est pestis; i. e. cave voluptatem, quae voluptas est pestis.* Caes. *Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* And here observe, that the antecedent is sometimes omitted in its proper place, and only expressed along with the relative; as, Ter. *Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulae;* for *fabulae, quas fabulas.* Ovid. *Sub qua nunc recubas arbore, virga fuit;* for *arbor, sub qua arbore.* Virg. *Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est;* for *urbs, quam urbem,* &c.

*Note* 2. An infinitive or a sentence sometimes supplies the place of a nominative to a verb, of a substantive to an adjective, of an antecedent to a relative; and in this case, the verb is in the third person, the adjective and relative are put in the neuter gender; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| To excel in knowledge is reckoned a fine thing. | *In scientia excellere pulchrum putatur.* |
| Peter is a learned man, which nobody denies. | *Petrus est vir doctus, quod nemo negat.* |

*Note* 2. The person of the relative is always the same with that of its antecedent; as, *Ego qui doceo; tu qui discis; lectio quae docetur.* The reason is plain, namely, the antecedent, which is supposed to be repeated along with the relative, is the true nominative to the verb; thus, *Ego qui doceo*, when supplied, is, *Ego qui ego doceo*, &c.

*Note* 4. When the relative comes betwixt two substantives of different genders, it sometimes, though more rarely, agrees with the last; as, Cic. *Animal quem vocamus hominem.*

*Note* 5. The antecedent is sometimes couched or included in the possessive pronoun; as, Ter. *Omnes laudare fortunas*, meas, qui *haberem gnatum tali ingenio praeditum.*

*Note* 6. The relative sometimes, instead of taking the gender of the antecedent, takes the gender of some synonymous word suppressed; as, Sall. *Earum rerum, quae prima mortales dicunt;* sc. *negotia.*

*Note* 7. The interrogatives or indefinites, *qualis, quantus, quotus, quotuplex*, &c. sometimes observe the construction of the relative *qui, quae, quod;* as, Ovid. *Facies non omnibus una, nec diversa tamen; qualem decet esse sororum.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Annibal, who had made trial of the Roman courage, denied that the Romans could be conquered but in Italy. | *Annibal, qui tento Romanus virtus, nego Romanus possum opprimo nisi in Italia.* |
| Cæsar first conquered the Helvetii, who are now called the Sequani; after that he subdued all Gaul, that is betwixt the Alps and the British ocean. | *Cæsar primo vinco Helvetii, qui nunc appello Sequani; deinde domo omnis Gallia, qui sum inter Alpes et oceanus Britannicus.* |
| Many find fault with crimes which they will not forsake; but let us pursue virtue, in which true glory consists; for gold, which is so eagerly sought after by men, often hurts. | *Multus corripio crimen qui nolo linquo; sed ego colo virtus, in qui verus decus sum positus; nam aurum, qui tam cupide peto ab homo, saepe noceo.* |
| They are good boys whom glory encourages, and commendation delights; they will become excellent men. | *Ille sum bonus puer qui gloria excito, et laus delecto; fio egregius vir.* |
| The city which Romulus built was called Rome, the inhabitants were named Romans, and were deservedly esteemed very brave men. | *Urbs qui Romulus condo voco Roma, incola nomino Romanus, et merito habeo fortis vir.* |
| *Note* 2. To read and not to | *Lego et non intelligo,* |

| | |
|---|---|
| understand, is to neglect; to sow and not to reap, is to lose your labour. | *sum negligo; sero et non meto, sum perdo opera.* |
| Not to know what happened before thou wert born, is to be always a child. | *Nescio quid accido antequam nascor, sum semper sum puer.* |
| To see is pleasant, but to discover truth is more pleasant; philosophy, therefore, which searches for truth, is a most noble study. | *Video sum jucundus, sed invenio veritas sum jucundus; philosophia, igitur, qui investigo veritas, sum honestus studium.* |
| To flee when our country is invaded is base; let us therefore fight valiantly; to die for one's country is sweet and glorious. | *Fugio cum patria noster oppugno sum turpis; pugno igitur strenue; morior pro patria sum dulcis et decorus.* |
| Men often pursue pleasure, which is a pernicious thing; but do thou seek after true glory, which is a commendable thing. | *Homo saepe sector voluptas, qui sum perniciosus; sed tu quaero verus gloria, qui sum laudabilis.* |
| To know one's self is the first step towards wisdom; which, as it is a very hard thing, so it is a very useful thing. | *Nosco sui ipse sum primus, gradus ad sapientia; qui, ut sum difficilis, ita sum utilis* |

If thy soul thirsteth for honour, if thine ear loveth praise, raise thyself from the dust, of which thou art made, and aspire after something that is great and good. The oak, which now spreadeth its branches towards heaven, was once but an acorn.

To go to school and not to learn, is to trifle; and to go to church and not to hear, is to profane that sacred place: but to make advances in knowledge and wisdom, is an excellent thing.

9. Two or more substantives singular, coupled together with a conjunction (*et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have a verb, adiective, or relative plural.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cyrus and Alexander, who subdued Asia, are renowned among all nations. | *Cyrus et Alexander, qui domuerunt Asiam, sunt inclyti apud omnes gentes.* |

*Note* 1. If the singular substantives be nominatives, and of different persons, the plural verb will agree with the more worthy person; that is, with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well | *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemur* |

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

brother read Terence, whilst I and the servant were gathering flowers.

*Terentius, dum ego et famulus carpo flos.*

*Note* 2. The man and the woman whom I and you saw yesterday, are dead to-day, and will be buried to-morrow.

*Vir et foemina, qui ego et tu video heri, sum mortuus hodie, et sepelio cras.*

Honour, praise, and glory are valued and sought after by good men; but laws, faith, and the gods themselves are trampled on by the wicked.

*Honos, laus, et decus sum aestimatus, et quaesitus a bonus vir; sed jus, fides, et deus ipse sum calcatus ab improbus.*

After the greatest jollity and wantonness, which a long quiet had produced, all on a sudden, consternation and sorrow overspread the city; but the night and the plunder retarded the enemy.

*Ex summus laetitia atque lascivia, qui diuturnus quies pario, repente metus atque moeror invado civitas; sed nox et praeda remoratus sum hostis.*

A contented mind and a good conscience will make a man happy in all conditions, but distraction cometh upon the wicked man as a whirlwind; shame and repentance descend with him to the grave.

Augustus, writing to Tiberius, hath these words: If we shall hear that you are sickly, I and your mother will die.

The man-servant and maid, who do their duty carefully, are to be commended and rewarded.

---

## *RULE IV.*

10. SUBSTANTIVES signifying the same thing agree in case.

Julius Cæsar, the first Roman emperor, was an excellent orator.

*Julius Cæsar, primus Romanus imperator, fuit eximius orator.*

*Note* 1. This concord is called *opposition*, and it is not necessary that the substantives agree in gender, number, or person. The construction, strictly speaking, is elliptical, and may be supplied with the obsolete participle *ens*, or by *qui est*, *qui vocatur*, or the like; as, *Anna soror*, i. e. *Anna ens soror*, or *quae est soror*

*Note* 2. When a plural appellative is put in apposition with two or more proper names of different genders, the appellative must be of the more worthy gender; as, Liv. *Ad Ptolemaeum Cleopatramque reges leguti missi*, not *reginas*. Here *reges* denotes both *regem* and *reginam*.

*Note* 3. The latter substantive is sometimes put in the genitive; as, Cic. *In oppido Antiochiae*. Virg. *Amnis Eridani*.

*Note* 4. A clause or sentence sometimes supplies the place of one of the substantives; as, Quintc. *Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.*

The sheep, innocent creatures, are often torn and devoured by the furious ravenous wild beasts, the wolves.

*Ovis, innoxius animal, saepe dilacero et devoro a rabidus rapax fera, lupus.*

While these things are doing at the Hellespont, Perdiccas is slain at the river Nile by Seleucus and Antigonus.

*Dum hic gero apud Hellespontus, Perdiccas interficio apud flumen Nilus a Seleucus et Antigonus.*

They say that Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, was a very great philosopher; he sent his son Marcus to the city Athens to attend Cratippus, a very famous teacher, and be educated by him.

*Aio Marcus Tullius Cicero, orator, sum magnus philosophus; mitto filius Marcus ad urbs Athenae, ut audio Cratippus, celeber doctor, et instituo ab is.*

In the mean time Asdrubal and his colleague, who had continued in Spain with a great army, are conquered by the two Scipios, the Roman generals.

*Interea Asdrubal et colega, qui remaneo in Hispania cum magnus exercitus, vinco a duo Scipio, Romanus dux.*

Our Lord Jesus Christ, the only Saviour, came into the world, that he might redeem sinners from sin, death, and destruction, and that they who should believe in his name, might not perish, but have eternal life.

Demosthenes, the orator, that he might rouse his fellow-citizens, the Athenians, to war against Alexander, brought a man into the assembly, who affirmed, that he had been wounded in a battle, in which Philip the king was slain

## APPENDIX.

To these four concords some add a fifth, *viz.* that of the *responsive* with the *interrogative* in case; as, *Quis gubernat mundum? Deus. Cujus es? Amphitryonis. Cui dedisti librum? Petro. Quid meritus es? Crucem. Quo cares? Libro.* But this, strictly speaking, is no concord; for the responsive does not depend upon the interrogative, but upon the verb, or some word joined with it, which is generally suppressed in the answer, and may be supplied thus: *Quis gubernat mundum?* Deus gubernat *mundum. Cujus es?* Sum servus *Amphitryonis. Cui dedisti librum?* Dedi librum *Petro*, &c. And if the word, on which the answer depends, require a different construction, this concord does not take place; as, *Quanti emptae? Octussibus. Cujus est liber? Meus. Cuja interest Deo parere? Omnium hominum*, &c.

---

## *II. OF GOVERNMENT.*

GOVERNMENT is three-fold.

1. Of nouns.
2. Of verbs.
3. Of words indeclinable.

# I. *The Government of Nouns.*

## § 1. Of Substantives

### *RULE I.*

11. ONE substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the genitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| Virtue removes the fear of death. | *Virtus tollit terrorem mortis.* |
| Nature's laws cannot be changed. | *Naturae leges non possunt mutari.* |
| The souls of men are immortal, but their bodies return to dust. | *Animi hominum sunt immortales, sed corpora eorum in pulverem redeunt.* |

*Note* 1. The Latin noun to be put in the genitive, is that which answers to the English word following the particle *of*, or to the word ending in *'s*.

*Note* 2. The pronouns *hujus*, *ejus*, *illius*, *cujus*, &c. englished *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, *thereof*, *whereof*, *whose*, have their substantive generally suppressed; as, *Liber ejus*, [sc. *hominis*, &c.] his book, or her book; *Libri eorum*, [sc. *hominum*, &c.] their books.

*Note* 3. These following adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *caetera*, generally denote *pars prima*, *media*, *ultima*, &c. of the substantive with which they are joined. Thus *prima fabula*, is the same as *prima pars fabulae*, and does not signify the first fable, but the first part of the fable. And *summa arbor*, the same as *summa pars arboris*, does not signify the highest tree, but the top or highest part of the tree. In like manner are to be understood *media nox*, *ultima platea*, *ima cera*, *supremus mons*, *reliqua Ægyptus*, *caetera turba*, &c.

ANNOTATIONS.

* 12. If the last substantive have an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Thy brother is a boy of a fine disposition, of the strictest virtue, of a graceful mien, and handsome person. | *Frater tuus est puer probae indolis, summae virtutis, honesta facie, et figura venusta.* |

*Note* 1. The first substantive is often suppressed; as, Hor. *Di me pusilli finxerunt animi;* sup. *virum.* Sall. *Vulgus est ingenio mobili;* sup. *populus.*

*Note* 2. The latter substantive must signify some part or property of the first otherwise it does not belong to this rule. Hence from this rule are excluded Virg. *Pulchra prole parentem.* Hor. *Rex gelidae orae.* Juv. *Gallinae filius albae. Pater optimorum liberorum.* And the like, where the latter substantive signifies neither any part, nor any property of the first.

*Note* 3. The adjective is sometimes joined with the first substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative; as, Cic. *Hortensius excellens ingenio, nobilitate, existimatione.* Id. *Vir gravitate et prudentia praestans.* Sall. *Antonius pedibus aeger.* And by the poets sometimes in the accusative; as, Virg.

*Os humerosque Deo similis.* Hor. *Nec Mauris animum mitior anguibus.* Stat. *Heros accurrit vultum dejectus.* Hor. *Miles fractus membra.* Luc. *In vultus effusa comas Cornelia.* To which we may understand the preposition *secundum* or *quod ad;* thus, *Similis Deo,* secundum vel quod ad *os humerosque. Mitior,* secundum vel quod ad *animum. Dejectus,* secundum vel quod ad *vultum. Fractus,* secundum vel quod ad *membra. Effusa,* secundum vel quod ad *comas.*

*Note* 4. In like manner, neuter and passive verbs are construed with the ablative; as, Hor. *Et corde et genibus tremit.* Liv. *Laevo brachio vulneratur.* And by the poets with the accusative; as, Hor. *Tremis ossa pavore.* Sil. *Truncatur membra bipenni.* Virg. *Expleri mentem nequit;* i. e. *tremis,* secundum vel quod ad *ossa pavore; truncatur,* secundum vel quod ad *membra bipenni,* &c.

*Note* 5. When the latter substantive is put in the ablative, some preposition, such as *cum, de, ex, in, a, ab,* with *ens, existens, natus, praeditus, affectus,* or the like, is understood; as, *Homo antiqua virtute;* i. e. *ens cum antiqua virtute. Vir claris natalibus; natus seu ortus de vel ex. Homo infirma valetudine;* i. e. *affectus ab,* &c.

* 13. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| The soldiers seem to move this way, a great deal of silver glitters on their arms, what is the meaning? what is the matter? | *Milites huc tendere videntur, plurimum argenti fulget in armis, quid causae? quid rei est?* |

*Note* 1. These adjectives are generally such as signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum;* also *id, quid, hoc, aliquid, quidquam;* to which may be added, *summum, extremum, ultimum, dimidium, medium;* as, *summum montis, extremo anni, ultimum periculi, dimidium animae, medium noctis.* To these may likewise be added a great many plural neuters; such as, Virg. *Angusta viarum, opaca locorum, telluris operta.* Hor. *Amara curarum, cuncta terrarum, acuta belli.* Liv. *Incerta fortunae, antiqua foederum, extrema periculorum.* Tac. *Occulta saltuum, inania famae, amoena Asiae.* Just. *Profunda camporum, praerupta, collium, ardua montium,* &c. And sometimes other singular neuters; as, Tac. *Lubricum juventae.* Virg. *Sub obscurum noctis. Ex diverso coeli,* &c.

*Note* 2. The substantive understood to these neuter adjectives is *negotium, tempus, locum* [whence *loca*], *spatium,* or the like; as, *Tantum telluris;* sup. *spatium. Hoc noctis;* sup. *tempore,* or *ad tempus,* &c.

*Note* 3. *Plus* and *quid* always govern the genitive; and, on that account, are esteemed by many real substances.

*Note* 4. *Opus* and *usus* govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive, of the thing wanted, together with the dative of the person, who wants, expressed or understood; as, Cic. *Auctoritate tua nobis opus est.* Virg. *Nunc viribus usus;* sup. *est vobis.* Quinct. *Lectionis opus est.* Liv. *Si quo usus operae sit. Opus* elegantly governs a participle in the ablative. and that either with a substantive; as, Plaut. *Celeriter mihi hoc homine convento est opus.* Or without a substantive; as, Liv. *Maturato opus est. Opus* is likewise sometimes joined, by way of adjective, with a substantive; as, Cic. *Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* Id. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse.* And in Plautus we find *usus* governing a participle in the ablative, in the same manner as *opus;* Bacch. *Quid usus est conscriptis ap hunc modum tubulis?* Amph. *Citius, quod non facto est usus, fit, quam quod facto est opus.* And there is at least one example of its being joined by way of adjective to a substantive, Plaut. Rud. *Hoc neque isti usus est; et illi miserae suppetias feret.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 11. The power of honesty is so great, that we love it even in an enemy. | *Vis honestas sum tantus, ut diligo is etiam in hostis.* |

Marcellus engaged with a small body of horse, and slew Viridomarus king of the Gauls.

*Marcellus dimico cum parvus manus eques, et occido Viridomarus rex Gallus.*

Lampedo, the Lacedemonian, is said to have been the only woman in any age, who was a king's daughter, a king's wife, and a king's mother.

*Lampedo, Lacedaemonius, dico sum unicus foemina in omnis aevum, qui sum rex filia, rex uxor, et rex mater.*

God, who knoweth man's heart, will punish the wicked who transgress his commands.

*Deus, qui nosco homo cor, punio scelestus qui violo is praeceptum.*

They are not rich, whose money is increased, or whose flocks are many; but he is rich, whose mind is quiet and content.

*Ille non sum dives, qui pecunia augeo, aut qui grex sum multus; sed ille sum dives, qui animus sum quietus et tranquillus.*

A kindness does not consist in that which is done or given, but in the intention of the doer or giver.

*Beneficium non consisto in is qui fio aut do, sed in animus faciens aut dans.*

My father and mother were very pious, I will implore the divine assistance, and will follow their good example.

*Meus pater et mater sum valde pius, imploro divinus opis, et sequor is bonus exemplum.*

12. Numerianus, Carus' son, a young man of an extraordinary genius, was taken off by a plot among the Persians.

*Numerianus, Carus filius, adolescens egregius indoles, occido per insidiae apud Persae.*

Olympias confessed, that she had conceived Alexander, not by her husband Philip, but by a serpent of a huge bigness.

*Olympias confiteor, sui concipio Alexander, non ex vir suus Philippus, sed ex serpens ingens magnitudo.*

Tiberius, the Roman emperor, was a man of a large and strong body, of a fair complexion, and a graceful aspect.

*Tiberius, Romanus imperator, sum vir amplus et robustus* 6 *corpus, candidus* 6 *color, et honestus* 6 *facies.*

Catiline was a man of great vigour both of mind and body, but of a wicked and perverse disposition.

*Catilina sum vir magnus* 6 *vis et animus et corpus, sed malus pravusque* 6 *ingenium.*

12. After the battle, much gold and other riches were

*Post praelium, multum aurum et alius opes in-*

found in the camp of the Persians.

*venio in castra Persae.*

As much money as any one has in his chest, so much credit has he; and he that has little money, ha likewise little credit.

*Quantum nummus quisque servo in arca suus, tantum fides habeo; et qui habeo paulŭlum pecunia, habeo etiam paululum fides.*

The victory is glorious, in which there is more [of] clemency than cruelty; for cruelty always occasions a great deal of mischief.

*Victoria sum praeclarus, in qui plus clementia sum quam crudelitas; nam crudelitas semper facio plurimum malum.*

Cicero was a man of a mild disposition, and polite eloquence; he had less courage than Julius Cæsar, but he had more honesty.

*Cicero sum vir mitis* 6 *ingenium, et comptus* 6 *facundia; habeo minus fortitudo quam Julius Cæsar, sed habeo plus probitas.*

What news is there in the city about Nero? a little before his death he leaned down upon a bed, and drank some warm water.

*Ecquid novum sum in civitas de Nero? sub mors decumbo super lectus, et bibo aliquantum tepidus aqua.*

After I had gone away from you, I wrote this little epistle, and I took care to avoid the words that might occasion any obscurity.

*Postquam discedo a tu, exaro hic literulae, et curo vito verbum qui possum affero aliquid obscuritas.*

*Note* 4. They have not so much need of precept as example; the boys are now arrived at that age, that they ought to behave wisely; what need is there of words?

*Non tam ille opus sum imperium quam exemplum; puer jam pervenio ad id aetas, ut debeo ago prudenter; quid opus sum verbum?*

Now there will be need of your assistance; for in a capital affair a judge ought to act cautiously, and there is need of great evidence.

*Nunc usus sum tuus opera; nam in res capitalis judex debeo ago caute, et opus sum magnus documentum.*

¶ The giants, who assaulted heaven, were buried under vast mountains; they endea-

*Gigas, qui oppugno coelum, sepelio sub ingens mons; conor surgo sub-*

vour to rise now and then, which causes the earthquake, as old poets affirm.

*inde, qui efficio terra motus, ut vetus poëta affirmo.*

Pompey triumphed on account of the Mithridatic war: no pomp of a triumph was ever like it: the son of Mithridates, the son of Tigranes, and Aristobulus king of the Jews, were led before his chariot.

*Pompeius triumpho de Mithridaticus bellum: nullus pompa triumphus unquam sum similis: filius Mithridates, filius Tigranes, et Aristobulus rex Judaeus, ductus sum ante is currus.*

The Athenians, that they might not be reduced to their former condition of slavery, draw together an army, and order it to be led by Iphicrates. The conduct of this youth was wonderful; nor had the Athenians ever before him, among so many and so great generals, a commander either of greater hopes, or of a riper genius.

*Atheniensis, ne redigo in pristinus sors servitus, contraho exercitus, jubeoque is duco per Iphicrates. Virtus dic adolescens sum admirabilis; nec Athenisis habeo unquam ante is, inter tot tantusque dux, imperator aut magnus spes, aut naturus indoles.*

After they had pitched their camp, they receive an account of an old story, that Cyrene, a lady of excellent beauty, carried away by Apollo from Pelion, a mountain in Thessaly, had been got with child by the god, and had brought forth four boys; and that Aristaeus, one of them, had first taught the use of bees and honey, and of milk for curds.

*Cum pono castra, accipio opinio vetus fabula, Cyrene, virgo eximius pulchritudo, raptus ab Apollo a Pelion, mons Thessalia, repleo a deus, et pario quatuor puer; et Aristaeus, unus ex hic, primus trado usus apis et mel, et lac ad coagulum.*

Courage was the cause of the victory; wherefore such was the slaughter of the enemy, that the victorious Romans did not drink more water than blood of the barbarians out of the bloody river.

*Virtus sum causa victoria; itaque is sum caedes hostis, ut victor Romanus non bibo plus aqua quam sanguis barbarus de cruentus flumen.*

At last Corinth, the head of Achaia, the glory of Greece, being deserted by the inhabit-

*Tandem Corinthus, caput Achaia, decus Graecia, desertus ab incola*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

## § 2. Of Adjectives.

### *RULE I.*

*14. VERBAL adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, require the genitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| This man is capable of friendship, a lover of his country, fond of learning, skilled in war, not ignorant of religion, and privy to all my designs. | *Hic vir est capax amicitiae, amans patriae, cupidus literarum, peritus belli, haud ignarus religionis, et conscius, omnium meorum consiliorum.* |

To this rule belong,

I. VERBALS in AX, and PARTICIPIALS in NS; as, *capax, edax, fugax, pertinax, pervicax, rapax, sagax, spernax, tenax, vorax,* &c. *amans, appetens, cupiens, experiens, intelligens, insolens, negligens, diligens, metuens, observans, patiens, impatiens, retinens, reverentior, sciens, servantissimus, timens, tolerans, fugiens, sitiens,* &c.

II. ADJECTIVES signifying an affection of the mind; such as,

1. DESIRE and DISDAIN; as, *cupidus, avarus, avidus, studiosus, curiosus, aemulus, fastidiosus, incuriosus, profusus,* &c.

2. KNOWLEDGE; as, *peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, praescius, praesagus, certus, certior, memor, expertus, consultus, assuetus,* &c.

3. IGNORANCE; as, *ignarus, rudis, imperitus, imprudens, improvidus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, solicitus, immemor, ambiguus, suspensus, indoctus, inexpertus, formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus;* also, *insuetus, insolitus, securus, intrepidus, interritus, impavidus,* &c.

4. GUILT; as, *conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus, noxius, compertus;* also, *innoxius, innocens, insons,* &c.

*Note* 1. Verbals or verbal adjectives are adjective nouns derived from verbs; as, *capax* from *capio*, *edax* from *edo*, &c. Participials are participles turned into adjective nouns; such as, *patiens, impatiens; doctus, indoctus; expertus, inexpertus;* &c. Here observe that the participial and participle, though the word be often the same, differ in signification, as well as in point of construction; the participle signifies a single act at a certain time; but the participial, without regard to any particular time, denotes a habit. Thus, *patiens frigus* signifies a person just now exposed to the cold, however unfit he may be to bear it; but *patiens frigoris* denotes one whom nature or custom has enabled or fitted to bear cold with ease. Again, *doctus grammaticam* signifies a person who some time ago has

been taught grammar, though perhaps, he never understood it, or has now forgot it; but *doctus grammaticae* denotes one who by long study has attained a thorough knowledge in grammar, or is become a connoisseur in it. Again, participials admit the degrees of comparison, which participles do not; thus, *amans, amantior, amantissimus; doctus, doctior, doctissimus.*

*Note* 2. To this rule may be referred a great variety of other adjectives, the more common of which occur in the following phrases: 'Abjectior animi, absteinius vini, 'acer militiae, illustrium domuum adversa, aeger animi, aequales aevi, aequus 'absentium, illarum rerum affines, alienum dignitatis, alternus animae, amens 'animi, anhelus laboris, ardens animi, atrox odii, audax ingenii, aversus animi, bi-'bulus Falerni, blandus precum, caecus animi, captus animi, catus legum, com-'mune omnium, confidens animi, confirmatus animi, confusus animi, conterminus 'jugi, contraria virtutum, credulus adversi, degener virtutis, devius aequi, diser-'tus leporum, dispar sortis, dissimilis tui, diversus morum, divina avis imbrium, du-'rus oris, effusissimus munificentiae, egregius animi, enunciativus corporum, erec-'tus animi, exactus morum, exiguus animi, eximius animi, exosa vitae, externatus 'animi, facilis frugum, fallax amicitiae, falsus animi, felix cerebri, ferox animi, 'fervidus ingenii, fessus rerum, festinus voti, fidens animi, fidissima tui, finitimus 'fluvii, flavus comarum, floridior aevi, fluxi vestium, fortunatus laborum, frustra-'tus decoris, fugitivus patriae, furens animi, gaudens alti, illex animi, impiger 'militiae, improba connubii, incautus futuri, inconsuetus mensae, indecora for 'mae, indocilis pacis, infelix culpae, ingens animi, inglorius militiae, ingratus sa 'lutis, insanus, animi, insolens infamiae, integer animi, invictus laboris, lapsus ani-'mi, lassus maris, lentus coepti, levis opum, madidus roris, maturus laudum, maxi-'mus aevi, medius coeli, miser animi, moderatus irae, mutabile mentis, mutatus 'animi, nobilis fandi, notus fugarum, obnoxius timoris, occultus odii, optimus 'militiae, oriundus cujus patriae, ornatus fidei, otiosi studiorum, pares aetatis, 'perfida pacti, periclitabundus sui, perinfames maleficae disciplinae, piger pericli, 'praeclarus fidei, praeceps animi, praecipuus virtutis, praestans belli, pravus fa-'voris, primus luendae poenae, properus occasionis, propriae Deorum voluptates, 'procax otii, profugus regni, promptus belli, pulcherrimus irae, recreatus animi, 'rectus judicii, resides bellorum, sanus mentis, saucius famae, scitus vadorum, 'secors rerum, secreta teporis, segnis occasionum, seri studiorum, sicci sangui-'nis enses, significativus belli cometes, similis tui, sinister fidei, solers lyrae, 'spernendus morum, spreta vigoris, stabilis sui orbis, strenuus militiae, stupens 'animi, summus severitatis, superior sui, superstes bellorum, surdus veritatis, 'tantus animi, tardus fugae, tenella animi, territus animi, turbatus animi, turbi-'dus animi, vafer juris, vagus animi, validus opum, vanus veri, vecors animi, 'venerandus sceptri, versus animi, versutus ingenii, vetus regnandi, victus animi, 'vigil armenti, viridissimus irae, unius rerum.'

*Note* 3. Of the adjectives belonging to this rule, *aemulus, certus, incertus, dubius, ambiguus, conscius, manifestus, suspectus, noxius, compertus*, instead of the genitive, take frequently the dative, but generally in a different sense, as will be taught in No. 16. Several also of the adjectives in note 2, such as, *adversus, aequalis, affinis, alienus, blandus, communis, conterminus, contrarius, credulus, dispar, dissimilis, fidus, finitimus, par, proprius, similis, superstes*, and some others, take oftener the dative than the genitive, as will likewise be taught in No. 16. And *superior, captus, oriundus, gaudens*, take commonly the ablative, as taught in No. 19. 20. 52.

*Note* 4. Many of the adjectives belonging to this rule, admit of other constructions; as, Cic. *De alieno negligens.* Id. *Avidus in pecuniis.* Id. *Certior factus de re.* Liv. *Securus de bello.* Cic. *Nulla in re rudis.* Id. *Doctus Latinis literis.* Plin. *Suspecta incestu.* Cic. *Reus de vi. Reus magnis criminibus.* Colum. *Innoxius ab injuria.* Many also of those enumerated in note 2. either take the ablative, or admit of some other construction; as, Ovid. *Felix morte sua.* Cic. *Ferox natura.* Id. *Praestans ingenio et doctrina.* Tac. *Devius consiliis.* Ovid. *Fugitivus a domino.* Cic. *Profugi ab Thebis.* Tac. *Degener ad pericula.* And *alienus* has very frequently the ablative, with *a* or *ab*; as, Ter. *Homo sum: humani nihil a me alienum puto.*

*Note* 5. The genitive, according to Grammarians, is not governed by these adjectives, but by *in re, in nogotio, in causa*, or the like, understood; except in cases where the adjective is used substantively.

I. Blasius was a man capable of profound thought, firm in his resolution, despising death and avoiding ambition; he was a quick discerner of things, and

*Blasius sum vir capax altus mens, tenax propositum, spernax mors, et fugax ambitio; sum sagax res, it pertinax rectum;*

a stickler for what was right; but he was obstinate in wrath, and a devourer of much meat.

*sed sum pervicax ira, et edax multus cibus.*

The Emperor's freed man was a man able to endure cold, and capable of bearing want; but he was afraid of the lash, and unacquaint with war: he was skilled in music, fond of pleasure, and a lover of wine: nay, he was greedy of praise, covetous of applause, but equally neglectful of friends and enemies. He was, however, most observant of justice, and nobody was more revereful of the gods.

*Imperator libertus sum homo patiens algor, et tolerans penuria; sed sum metuens flagellum, et insolens bellum: sum sciens musica, cupiens voluptas, et amans vinum: imo sum appetens laus, sitiens fama, sed aeque negligens amicus inimicusque. Sum tamen servantissimus aequum, et nemo sum reverentior deus.*

II. 1. The man, whom I mentioned above, was of a fickle temper; at first he was desirous of war, greedy of military glory, and weary of learning; but after Carthage, that vied with the city of Rome for so many years, was destroyed, he was fond of peace, addicted to eloquence, and much taken up with physic.

*Vir, qui memoro supra, sum mobilis 6 ingenium; primo sum avidus bellum, avarus militaris gloria, et fastidiosus literæ; sed postquam Carthago, aemulus urbs Roma per tot annus, everto, sum cupidus pax, studiosus eloquentia, et curiosus medicina.*

2. Our general is skilled in many things, being expert at arms, well seen in the art military, versed in war, foreseeing what is to come, aware of things future, well assured of what will happen, but undaunted at danger, and not afraid of death: his son is well acquaint with learning, but apt to learn vice; he is skilled in the law, versed in country affairs, and mindful of a good turn.

*Noster dux sum peritus multus res, gnarus arma, prudens res militaris, expertus bellum, praescius venturum, providus res futurus, certus futurum, verum intrepidus periculum et interritus letum: is filius sum doctus literae, sed docilis pravum; sum consultus jus, callidus res rusticus, et memor beneficium.*

3. This man is void of learning, ignorant of philosophy, unskilled at arms, unacquaint with

*Hic homo sum rudis literae, ignarus philosophia, inscius arma, imperitus*

the world, not afraid of the gods, unaccustomed to hardship, not used to slavery, fearless of death, unmindful of his condition, and regardless of reputation. His wife, ignorant of her extraction, is unstaid in her mind, wavering in her resolution, concerned and in pain for her affairs, and perplexed about the theft.

*res, haud timidus deus, insuetus labor, insolitus servitium, impavidus mors, immemor sors, et securus fama. Is uxor, nescius genus, sum incertus animus, dubius consilium, solicitus et trepidus res suus, et anxius furtum.*

4. The orator defended two men accused of parricide, and suspected of capital crimes: the one had been privy to murder, and concerned in a conspiracy, who, being evidently guilty of the villainy, and convicted of the crime, was condemned: the other, being guiltless [sakeless] of the facts, not concerned in the plot entered into against the king's life, innocent of his brother's blood, and found guilty of no crime, was acquitted.

*Orator defendo duo homo reus parricidium, et suspectus capitalis crimen: alter sum conscius caedes, et noxius conjuratio, qui manifestus scelus, et convictus facinus, condemno: alter, innocens factum, innoxius consilium initus in rex caput, insons fraternus sanguis, et compertus nullus flagitium, absolvo.*

¶ Shame and modesty are weak restraints amongst men thirsting after power, and regardless of honour: accordingly Domitian proceeded to huge excesses of lust, rage, cruelty, and avarice, and raised so great a hatred against himself, that he quite wiped off the merits of his father and brother.

*Pudor et modestia sum infirmus vinculum apud homo avidus potentia, et securus decus: itaque Domitianus progredior ad ingens vitium libido, iracundia, crudelitas, et avaritia, et concito tantus odium in sui, ut penitus aboleo meritum pater et frater.*

Catiline, a man of a very noble extraction, but of a very wicked disposition, with some famous indeed, but daring men, conspired against his country; his accomplices being seized were strangled in prison; and,

*Catilina, vir nobilis* 6 *genus, sed pravus* 6 *ingenium, cum quidam clarus quidem, sed audax vir, conjuro adversus patria; is socius deprehensus strangulo in carcer; et sane*

indeed, what could be hard, or too severe, against men convicted of such villainy?

*quis possum sum acerbus aut nimis gravis in homo convictus tantus facinus?*

Vespasian, the emperor, was apt not to remember offences and quarrels; he took patiently the ill language uttered against him by the lawyers and philosophers: and Galba was a man not regardless of fame, not covetous of other men's money, but greedy of the public money, and not lavish of his own; could bear with his friends and freed men; was capable of empire, had he not governed.

*Vespasianus, princeps, sum immemor offensa et inimicitia; leniter fero convicium dictus in sui a causidicus et philosophus: et Galba sum vir non incuriosus fama, non appetens alienus pecunia, sed avarus pecunia publicus, et non profusus suus; patiens amicus libertusque; capax imperium, nisi impero.*

Cineas, who was Demosthenes' scholar, and skilled in the Latin tongue, was sent to Rome by Pyrrhus, to advise the Romans to sue for peace; but the Romans afterwards despatched generals into Greece and other quarters, who taught the nations, till that time free, and therefore unable to bear the yoke, to beg peace of them, and be subject.

*Cineas, qui sum Demosthenes discipulus, et doctus Latinus lingua, mitto ad Roma a Pyrrhus, ut hortor Romanus peto pax; sed Romanus postea mitto dux in Graecia aliusque pars, qui doceo gens, ad id tempus liber, et ideo impatiens jugum, peto pax a sui, et servio.*

Sylla was fond of pleasure, but fonder of glory: he hastened with his victorious army from Asia: and, indeed, since Marius had been so cruel against his friends, how great severity was there occasion for, that Sylla might be revenged of Marius?

*Sylla sum cupidus voluptas, sed cupidus gloria: propero cum victor exercitus ab Asia: et sane quum Marius sum tam ferus in is amicus, quantus saevitia opus sum, ut Sylla vindico de Marius?*

Agesilaus was an excellent general, undaunted at danger, able to endure want, and accustomed to hardship: he was a man of low stature, and slender body; so that strangers, when they beheld his person, despised him; but they who knew his abilities, could not sufficiently admire him.

Epaminondas, the son of Polymnus, the Theban, was modest, prudent, skilled in war, a lover of truth, and of a great spirit.

Nyctimene is said to have committed some horrible wickedness, for which she was changed into an owl, an ugly dismal bird, who, conscious of her guilt, never

appears when the sun shines, but, being driven from the society of birds, seeks to conceal her shame in the darkness of the night.

---

## *RULE II.*

* 15. PARTITIVES, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.

| | |
|---|---|
| None of the wild beasts. | *Nulla belluarum.* |
| The black among the vultures. | *Nigri vulturum.* |
| The elder of the brothers. | *Senior fratrum.* |
| The most learned of the Romans. | *Doctissimus Romanorum.* |
| Which of us? | *Quis nostrum?* |
| One of the muses. | *Una musarum.* |
| The eighth of the wise men. | *Octavus sapientum.* |

1. *Partitives* are adjective nouns, or pronouns, signifying many, or a part of many, severally, and, as it were, one by one; as, *ullus*, *nullus*, *solus*, *uter*, *uterque*, *utercunque*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *alter*, *alteruter*, *neuter*, *alius*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisquis*, *quisque*, *unusquisque*, *aliquot*, *caetera*, *reliquus*; to which add, *omnis*, *cunctus*, and the substantive *nemo*.

2. *Words placed partitively* are adjectives used in a partitive sense, or taken to signify a part of many; as, *lecti juvenum*, the choice of the young men; *nigrae lanarum*, the black hair among wool; *degeneres canum*, *sancti deorum*, &c. to which may be added the substantive *vulgus*; as, *vulgus Atheniensium*, *vulgus militum*.

3. *Comparatives* are adjectives of the comparative degree; as, *doctior*.

4. *Superlatives* are adjectives of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimus*.

5. *Interrogatives* are adjective nouns or pronouns, by which we ask a question; those belonging to this rule are, *quis*, *quisnam*, *quisque*, *uter*, *quot*, *quotus*, *quotusquisque*.

6. *Numerals* are adjectives signifying number; and to this rule belong both the *cardinals*, such as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*, &c. and the *ordinals*, such as, *primus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, &c. as also the *distributive*, *singuli*; to which add, *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*.

*Note* 1. The partitive, &c. takes the gender of the substantive it governs, when there is no other; but if there are two substantives of different genders, it generally agrees with the first; as, Cic. *Indus maximus fluminum.* Id. *Leo fortissimus animalium.* But not always; as, Plin. *Delphinus velocissimum omnium animalium.*

*Note* 2. Partitives, &c. govern the genitive singular of collectives; as, Cic. *Praestantissimus nostrae civitatis.* Virg. *Nympharum sanguinis una.*

*Note* 3. The comparative, as also the partitives, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, when they govern a genitive of partition, import a comparison betwixt two only; thus, speaking of two brothers, or two persons, we say, *major fratrum, uter vestrum?* But speaking of three or more, we say, *maximus fratrum, quis vestrum?* &c.

*Note* 4. Instead of the genitive of partition, we often find the ablative with *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, and sometimes the accusative with *inter*, or *ante*; as, Ovid. *De tot modo fratribus unus.* Cic. *Unus e Stoicis.* Id. *Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi.* Senec. *Croesus inter reges opulentissimus.* Liv. *Longe ante alios acceptissimus militum animis.*

*Note* 5. After partitives, &c. we use the genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum*, but not *nostri* or *vestri.*

*Note* 6. In this construction of partitives, &c. *de*, *e*, vel *ex numero*, is understood, or sometimes expressed, as, Juv. *Quaedam de numero Lamiarum.* V. Max. *Unus e numero Persarum.* Caes. *Ex numero adversariorum sexcentis interfectis.*

1. Augustus, after the civil wars, neither in his harangues nor in his edicts, called any of the military fellow-soldiers.

*Augustus, post civilis bellum, neque in concio neque per edictum, appello ullus miles commilito.*

Alexander engaged with none of his enemies whom he did not conquer, and laid siege to no town which he did not take.

*Alexander congredior cum nullus hostis qui non vinco, et obsideo nullus urbs qui non expugno.*

Spain was invaded by the Romans before it knew itself, and alone of all the provinces understood its own strength after it was subdued.

*Hispania obsideo a Romanus antequam cognosco sui, et solus omnis provincia intelligo suus vires postquam vinco.*

Who will wonder that the enemy gave way, when one of the consuls ordered his own son, though victorious, to be slain, because he had fought contrary to orders?

*Quis miror hostis cedo, quum alter consul jubeo suus filius, quamvis victor, occido, quia pugno contra imperium?*

What every one of your friends may have written to the general concerning these two men, I know not; but neither of them is much to be blamed; the rest of the soldiers were also in the fault, and none of us is innocent.

*Quis quisque tuus necessarius scribo ad imperator de hic duo vir, nescio; sed neuter is sum valde reprehendendus; reliquus miles sum etiam in culpa, et nemo ego sum innocuus.*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

accomplished of all. But what one of a thousand [of] great generals is happy?

The tyrants are conquered, and fly back to the city. After this, they begged assistance of the Lacedemonians. The war is renewed; five hundred of the Lacedemonians are slain in battle, Critias and Hippolochus, the most cruel of all the tyrants, fall. But who amongst men, or which of the gods, bewailed their death?

Many of the soldiers were kissing the hands and feet of Otho, and calling him the only emperor; whilst, in the mean time, Vitellius, ignorant of the victory, was drawing together the remaining strength of the German army; most of the soldiers were on their march, a few only of the veterans were left in the winter-quarters.

Of Cæsar's men, not above twenty were missing; but in the castle there were none of the soldiers but were wounded; four of the centurions lost their eyes; thirty thousand arrows were shot into the castle by the enemy; and in the shield of Scaeva, the centurion, were found two hundred and thirty holes.

Sicily, at the beginning, was the country of the Cyclops: after they were extirpated, Cocalus seized the government of the island: after whom each of the cities fell under the power of tyrants.

Cæsar, the most penetrating,

*solertissimus omnis. Sed quotusquisque magnus dux sum felix?*

*Tyrannus vinco, et in urbs refugio. Post hic peto auxilium a Lacedaemonius. Bellum redintegro, quingenti Lacedaemonius interficio in praelium, Critias et Hippolochus, omnis tyrannus saevissimus, cado. Sed quisnam homo, quisve deus, lugeo mors?*

*Multus miles exosculor manus ac pes Otho, unicusque imperator praedico; dum, interim, Vitellius, nescius victoria, traho reliquus vires Germanicus exercitus; plerique miles sum in iter, pauci tantum veteranus relinquo in hiberna.*

*Cæsar miles non amplius viginti sum desideratus: sed in castellum nemo miles omnino sum quin vulnero; quatuor centurio amitto oculus; triginta mille sagitta conjicio in castellum ab hostis; et in scutum Scaeva centurio invenio* ccxxx *foramen.*

*Sicilia a principium sum patria Cyclops: postquam ille extinguo, Cocalus occupo regnum insula: post qui singuli civitas concedo in imperium tyrannus.*

*Cæsar, sagacissimus ac*

and wisest of generals, resolves to take Dumnorix along with him into Britain, because he knew him to be desirous of change, fond of power, of a great spirit, and of great authority among the Gauls; though he persisted to intreat that he might be left in Gaul.

*sapientissimus dux, constituo duco Dumnorix suicum in Britannia, quod cognosco is cupidus res novus, avidus imperium, magnus animus, et magnus auctoritas inter Gallus; quamvis ille contendo peto, uti in Gallia relinquo.*

Gordius spied a young lady of excellent beauty at the gate of the city, and asked her which of the augurs he should consult? When she understood the occasion of his question, being skilled in the art, she told him that he should be a king, and promises that she would be the companion of his life and hopes. This offer seemed the chief happiness of a kingdom.

*Gordius conspicor virgo eximius pulchritudo ad porta urbs, et percontor quis augur consulo? Cum intelligo causa quaestio, peritus ars, respondeo, ille sum rex, et polliceor sui fore socius vita is et spes. Hic conditio videor primus felicitas regnum.*

Pylades and Orestes cherished a mutual love, and no mortal knows which of them was the more faithful.

The priestess of Apollo, being asked why Jupiter was esteemed the chief of the Gods, since Mars was the best soldier, made this answer: Mars is valiant, but Jupiter is wise.

The nation of the Suevi is the most warlike of all the Germans. The nature of their food, their daily exercise, and free manner of life, improve their strength, and make them men of huge stature of body.

When Faith, Temperance, the Graces, and other celestial powers, left the earth, (says one of the ancients,) Hope was the only goddess that staid behind.

The first of all virtues is innocence, the next is modesty. If we banish modesty out of the world, she carries away with her half the virtue that is in it.

---

## *RULE III.*

16. ADJECTIVES signifying profit or disprofit govern the dative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kind to me. | *Benignus mihi.* |
| Agreeable to the people. | *Acceptus plebi.* |
| Sentenced to punishment. | *Addictus supplicio.* |
| Evident to all. | *Apertum omnibus.* |
| Bordering on the sea. | *Finitimus mari.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Fit for study. | *Aptus studio.* |
| Frank to petitioners. | *Facilis rogantibus.* |
| Of the same age with Cicero. | *Aequalis Ciceroni.* |
| Like his father. | *Similis patri.* |
| Allied to heaven. | *Cognatus coelo.* |
| Exposed to danger. | *Obnoxius periculo.* |

To this rule belong chiefly adjectives signifying,

1. PROFIT or DISPROFIT; as, *benignus, bonus, utilis, commodus, felix, faustus, fructuosus, prosper, saluber;* also, *calamitosus, inutilis, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.*

2. PLEASURE or PAIN; as, *acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, laetus, suavis;* also, *acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus tristis.*

3. LOVE or HATRED; as, *addictus, aequus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius;* also, *adversus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.*

4. PERSPICUITY or OBSCURITY; as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus;* also, *ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. PROPINQUITY; as, *finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus, affinis.*

6. FITNESS or UNFITNESS; as, *aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus;* also, *ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.*

7. EASINESS or DIFFICULTY; as, *facilis, levis, obvius, pervius;* also, *difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, invius.*

8. EQUALITY or INEQUALITY; as, *aequalis, aequaevus, par, compar, suppar, communis;* and, *inaequalis, impar, dispar, discors:* Also, LIKENESS or UNLIKENESS; as, *similis, aemulus, geminus;* and, *dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Also, many compounded with CON; as, *cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, conscius, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, conterminus, contiguus, continuus, continens,* &c.

10. A great variety of other adjectives that cannot be reduced to distinct classes: as, *obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, superstes, proprius, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, praesto, secundus,* &c.

*Note* 1. With respect to the adjectives belonging to this rule, observe, 1. That *aemulus*, *certus*, *incertus*, *dubius*, *ambiguus*, *conscius*, *manifestus*, *suspectus*, *noxius*, *compertus*, &c. often govern the genitive, as was taught No. 14. 2. That though *adversus*, *aequalis*, *affinis*, *alienus*, *blandus*, *communis*, *conterminus*, *contrarius*, *credulus*, *dispar*, *dissimilis*, *fidus*, *finitimus*, *par*, *proprius*, *similis*, *superstes*, &c. take commonly the dative; yet sometimes they govern the genitive, as already observed in No. 14. note 2. 3. That *benignus*, *prosper*, *laetus*, *gravis*, and some others, often take the genitive or ablative, as belonging to No. 21. Here also observe, that adjectives belonging to different rules, and which admit of different constructions in different senses, sometimes take both cases after them; as, Ter. *Mens sibi conscia recti.*

*Note* 2. Some adjectives signifying love, hatred, or other passions toward or against a person; such as, *amicus*, *animatus*, *beneficus*, *benevolus*, *benignus*, *pius*, *gratus*, *misericors*, *liberalis*; *acerbus*, *severus*, *saevus*, *crudelis*, *iniquus*, *injuriosus*, *infensus*, &c. take often the accusative with the preposition *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*.

*Note* 3. Some adjectives signifying fitness, usefulness, or the contrary; such as, *accommodatus*, *appositus*, *aptus*, *congruus*, *commodus*, *habilis*, *idoneus*, *opportunus*, *utilisi ineptus*, *inhabilis*, *inutilis*, &c. take frequently the accusative with *ad*.

*Note* 4. Adjectives signifying motion, tendency, or propension to a thing; such as, *celer*, *tardus*, *velox*, *piger*, *impiger*, *lentus*, *praeceps*, *rapidus*, *segnis*; *declivis*, *inclinabilis*, *proclivis*, *pronus*; *propensus*, *paratus promptus*, *profugus*, &c. take the accusative with *ad* or *in* rather than the dative.

*Note* 5. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, sometimes take the accusative, the preposition *ad* being understood, but seldom or never expressed; as, Sall. *Vitium propius virtutem.* Cic. *Proximus Prompeium sedebam.*

*Note* 6. Substantives sometimes govern the dative; as, Virg. *Erit ille mihi semper Deus.* Ter. *Natura tu illi pater es, consiliis ego.* Hor. *Moestis praesidium reis.* Virg. *Tu decus omne tuis.* Cic. *Non hominibus sed virtutibus hostis.* Plaut. *Lupus est homo homini.* Luc. *Urbi pater est.* Ter. *Nostrae est fautrix familiae.*

*Note* 7. The dative, according to Grammarians, is not, properly speaking, governed either by adjectives, verbs, or any other part of speech; but is fitly subjoined to any word, when acquisition, ademption, advantage, disadvantage, or destination is signified.

## 17. Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative

| | |
|---|---|
| Wonderful to you. | *Mirabilis tibi.* |
| To be intreated by me. | *Exorandus mihi.* |

*Note* 1. The participle perfect, signifying passively, takes sometimes the dative, but oftener the ablative with *a* or *ab*. Cic. *Ego audita tibi putaram.* Id. *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.* Ovid. *Proditus a socio est.*

*Note* 2. Verbals in DUS also, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative with *a* or *ab*. Cic. *Admonendum a me.* Id. *Non eos venerandos a nobis.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 16. 1. Mallows are wholesome for the body, useful to the sick, and hurtful to no man; but some medicines are unprofitable to the physician himself, destructive to health, and pernicious to the patient. | *Malva sum saluber corpus, utilis aeger, et pestifer nemo; sed quidam medicamentum sum inutilis medicus ipse, perniciosus valetudo, et exitiosus aegrotus.* |
| The victory, which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was baneful to his coun- | *Victoria, qui Cæsar adipiscor in campus Pharsalia, sum calamitosus pa-* |

try, destructive to the common-wealth, pernicious to the Roman name, fatal to the city, and dismal to human kind.

*tria, damnosus respublica, exitiabilis Romanus nomen, funestus urbs, et dirus humanus genus.*

Fortune is always kind to you; my trade is profitable to me; the stars are beneficial to mariners; we shall loose from the harbour to-morrow; may it be lucky, fortunate, and happy for us all.

*Fortuna semper sum benignus tu; meus ars sum fructuosus ego; stella sum commodus nauta; solvo e portus cras; qui bonus, faustus, felixque sum ego omnis.*

2. My colleague is delightful to his friends, agreeable to his companions, acceptable to all, and unpleasant to nobody: without him, and without the study of letters, life itself would be tasteless to me.

*Meus collega sum jucundus amicus, acceptus comes, gratiosus omnis, et injucundus nemo: sine is, et sine studium literae, vita ipse forem insuavis ego.*

Dew on the tender grass is agreeable to cattle, and sleep is sweet to a traveller; a burden is irksome to a sluggish ass, and labour troublesome to a lazy person; an unripe grape is sour to the taste; and the wind is a sad thing for trees.

*Ros in tener gramen sum gratus pecus, et somnus. sum dulcis viator, onus sum ingratus piger asinus, et labor molestus ignavus; immaturus uva sum acerbus gustus; et ventus sum tristis arbor.*

3. Be just to all, kind to all, intimate with few, fawning to none, true to your lord, faithful to your master, gentle to your petitioner, merciful to enemies, and unjust to nobody: thus you will be dear to all, and hated by none.

*Sum tu aequus omnis, benevolus cunctus, familiaris pauci, blandus nullus, fidus dominus, fidelis herus, lenis precans, mitis hostis, et iniquus nemo: sic sum carus omnis, et odiosus nullus.*

Nero at first was friendly to good men, and addicted to the study of the muses; but the latter part of his life was contrary to the former; for now he was harsh to and angry with those that advised him, spiteful and enraged against mankind, an enemy to all, hated by the gods, and many things were cross to him.

*Nero primo sum amicus bonus, et deditus studium musa; sed posterior pars vita sum contrarius prior; nam jam sum asper et iratus monitor, infestus ac infensus humanus genus, inimicus omnis, invisus deus, et multus sum adversus ille.*

4. The arguments concerning the former pyramids appear dark to some, doubtful to others, and clear to few; but the three remaining pyramids, being situate on a hill, are visible to sailors, and known to all.

*Argumentum de prior pyramis video obscurus quidam, dubius alius, et perspicuus pauci; at tres reliquus pyramis, situs in mons, sum conspicuus navigans, et notus omnis.*

5. In Africa, the places that are next to our sea, nigh to Carthage, or near to Mauritania, are very fertile: but the places bordering on Numidia, and nearer to the scorching heats, are more barren.

*In Africa, locus qui sum proximus noster mare, propinquus Carthago, aut vicinus Mauritania, sum ferax: sed locus finitimus Numidia, et propior ardor, sum magis sterilis.*

6. Decency is adapted to the nature of things; thus, some colours are proper for mourning, and others quite improper for this purpose; the morning is friendly to the muses, and fit for study; a town situated on the shore is convenient for trade, but without walls it will be exposed to enemies.

*Decor sum accommodatus natura res; sic, quidam color sum conveniens luctus, et alius prorsus ineptus hic res; aurora sum amicus musa, et aptus studium; urbs appositus littus sum idoneus commercium, sed sine murus sum opportunus hostis.*

7. Nothing is difficult or hard to a brave man; to him no place is dangerous, no battle terrible, no sea unpassable; all hardships are easy and light to such a man; yet his mind is always disposed to peace, but ready and prepared for war.

*Nihil sum difficilis aut arduus fortis vir; is nullus locus sum periculosus, nullus praelium gravis, nullus mare invius; omnis labor sum facilis et levis talis vir; tamen animus sum semper pronus pax, sed promptus et paratus bellum.*

8. The poet married a wife equal in age, and every way a match for him; she was like her mother, her lips rivalled the roses; and, as a matron is diverse and different from a strumpet, so she was unlike her sister: but there is a fault different from this fault; her spirit was unsuitable and un-

*Poeta duco uxor aequaevus, et omnimodo par sui; sum similis mater, labrum sum aemulus rosa; et, ut matrona sum dispar atque discolor meretrix, ita sum dissimilis soror: sed sum vitium diversus hic vitium; animus sum alienus et impar fortuna*

equal to her fortune; sometimes she was inconsistent with herself; now she is dead; death is common to every age.

*nonnunquam sum dicors sui; nunc mortuus sum; mors sum communis omnis aetas.*

9. and 10. Heaven is allied to earth, nature is always consistent with itself, and men's fortune is agreeable to their manners; thus, the savage people bordering on Ethiopia are subject to sad slavery, exposed to many hardships; and yet, if you consider their strength, they are inferior to none of the neighbouring nations.

*Coelum sum cognatus tellus, natura semper sum concors sui, et homo fortuna sum consentaneus mos; sic ferus natio confinis Aethiopia sum subjectus tristis servitium, obnoxius multus injuria; et tamen, si specto vires, sum secundus nullus finitimus gens.*

*Note* 2. A good man is affectionate towards his parents, beneficent to his relations, benevolent to his friends, grateful to his well-wishers, well affected towards good men, kind to all, injurious to none, harsh to nobody, and not cruel or severe to an enemy.

*Bonus vir sum pius in parens, beneficus in propinquus, benevolus erga amicus, gratus adversus fautor, bene animatus in bonus, benignus erga omnis, injuriosus in nullus, acerbus in nemo, neque crudelis aut saevus in hostis.*

*Note* 3. This fellow is good for nothing, but his brother is good for many things; his shoes are tight and meet for his feet, his clothes are light and convenient for running, and the ground is proper for that purpose.

*Hic homo sum utilis ad nullus res, sed frater sum idoneus ad multus res; calceus sum habilis et aptus ad pes, vestis sum levis et commodus ad cursus, et locus sum opportunus ad is res.*

*Note* 4. The general is slow to punishment, swift to rewards, bent on war; his son too is alert for battle, and not backward to danger; but his mind is prone to cruelty, inclined to vice, and disposed to any wickedness.

*Dux sum piger ad poena, velox ad praemium, promptus ad bellum; filius quoque sum celer in pugna, et haud ignavus ad periculum; sed animus sum praeceps in crudelitas, propensus ad vitium, et paratus ad omnis nefas.*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

was the event of the war any other, than the preparation had been; wherefore, Antiochus was routed, and forced to flee into Asia.

*apparatus sum; quare Antiochus fugo, et cogo fugio in Asia.*

Nor was fortune more favourable to the flying Gauls: but continual showers, frost and snow, fatigue and famine, consumed the miserable remains of this unhappy war. The people and nations, too, through which they marched, followed the scattered Gauls, and slaughtered vast numbers of them.

*Nec fortuna sum benignus fugiens Gallus: sed assiduus imber, gelu et nix, lassitudo et fames, obtero miser reliquiae hic infelix bellum. Gens quoque et natio, per qui habeo iter, sector palans Gallus, et occido magnus is numerus.*

After the death of the king, the Alexandrians sent ambassadors to the Romans, intreating, that they would undertake the guardianship of the child, and defend the kingdom of Egypt, which they said Philip and Antiochus had divided betwixt them. This embassy was very acceptable to the Romans.

*Post mors rex, Alexandrinus mitto legatus ad Romanus, orans, ut suscipio tutela pupillus, et tutor regnum Ægyptus, qui dico Philippus et Antiochus divido inter sui. Hic legatio sum gratus Romanus.*

Ptolemy was as ridiculous to the Romans, as he was cruel to his own subjects. His countenance was deformed, his stature short, his belly hanging out, so that he was more like a beast than a man. He sent for his son from Cyrene, and slew him, lest the Alexandrians should make him king.

*Ptolemaeus sum tam ridiculus Romanus, quam sum cruentus civis suus. Vultus sum deformis, statura brevis, venter prominulus, ut sum similis bellua quam homo. Arcesso filius a Cyrenae, et interficio ille, ne Alexandrinus creo rex.*

After Alexander had dismissed his soldiers, being now near his death, he asked his friends standing about him, whether they thought that they could find a king like him?

*Postquam Alexander dimitto miles, jam proximus mors, percontor amicus circumstans, num existimo sui possum invenio rex similis sui? Cunctus*

They all held their tongue. Then he said, that he knew not that, but that he foresaw how much blood Macedonia would shed in that contest.

Nor did the friends of Alexander without reason expect his kingdom; for they were men of such valour and dignity, that you would have thought every one of them kings. Never would they have found any equal to themselves, if they had not clashed among themselves; and Macedonia would have had many Alexanders, instead of one, had not fortune armed them for their mutual destruction.

*taceo. Tum dico, sui nescio is, sed sui prospicio quantum sanguis Macedonia fundo in is certamen.*

*Nec amicus Alexander frustra regnum specto; nam sum vir is 6 virtus ac 6 veneratio, ut singuli is rex puto. Nunquam sui par reperio, si non inter sui concurro; multusque Macedonia, pro unus, Alexander habeo, nisi fortuna is in mutuus pernicies armo.*

Atticus is said to have been complaisant to strangers, agreeable to his friends, just to all, and troublesome to none. He so demeaned himself, that he seemed on a level with the lowest, yet equal to the greatest, and was deservedly very dear to the Athenians. Praise is grateful to human nature.

The heart of the envious man is gall and bitterness, his tongue spitteth venom, the success of his neighbour breaketh his rest, he sitteth in his cell repining; hatred and malice prey upon his heart, and there is no rest in him. He feeleth in his own breast no love of goodness, and therefore believeth his neighbour is like unto himself.

The hand of the generous man is like the clouds of heaven, which drop upon the earth, fruits, herbage, and flowers; but the heart of the ungrateful is like a desert of sand, which swalloweth the showers that fall, burieth them in its bosom, and produceth nothing.

A wise man considers that nothing is to be desired by him but what is laudable and excellent. Let us imitate the wise, and always live so as to think that an account must be given by us.

---

## *RULE IV.*

* 18. ADJECTIVES signifying dimension govern the accusative of measure.

The stones of Solomon's temple were forty cubits long, twelve cubits broad, and eight cubits high.

*Lapides Solomonis templi erant quadraginta cubitos longi, duodecim cubitos lati, et octo cubitos alti.**

---

* In this sentence, and in the latter half of the second example following, the *cardinal* numbers seem to be inaccurately put instead of the *distributive*. The

The Adjectives of DIMENSION are, *altus*, *crassus*, *densus*, *latus*, *longus*, *profundus*.

The names of MEASURE are, *digitus*, *palmus*, *per*, *cubitus* v. *um*, *ulna*, *passus*, *stadium*, *milliare*.

*Note* 1. Verbs of DIMENSION, such as, *pateo*, *cresco*, &c. govern also an accusative of MEASURE.

*Note* 2. The word of MEASURE is sometimes put in the ablative; as, Liv. *Fossa sex cubitis alta.* Pers. *Venter ejus extat sesquipede*; and sometimes, but rarely, in the genitive; as, Plin. *Nec longiores duodenum pedum.*

*Note* 3. The *measure of excess*, or the word denoting how much one thing exceeds or comes short of another, is always put in the ablative.

*Note* 4. To the *measure of excess* may be referred these ablatives, *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *aliquanto*, *multo*, *paulo*, *nihilo*, &c. which are frequently joined in this sense with the comparative degree, or sometimes with the superlative, or with a verb importing comparison.

*Note* 5. These adjectives do not govern the accusative of themselves, the preposition *ad* or *in* being understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Plin. *Longa folia habet fere ad tres digitos.* Colum. *Sulcum in quatuor pedes longum, in tres altum.* When they take the ablative, *a*, *ab*, *tenus*, or *in*, may be supplied; and when they take the genitive, *ad mensuram* vel *spatium* may be understood.

The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high, and fifty broad.

*Murus Babylon sum duceni pes altus, et quinquageni latus.*

This wall is five feet six inches high, and three hundred cubits long; and these trees are twenty feet long, and two feet round.

*Hic maceria sum quinque pes sex digitus altus, et trecenti cubitus longus; et hic arbor sum viginti pes longus, et duo per crassus.*

In this climate, about the day of the equinox, a gnomon seven feet high casts a shadow not above four feet long.

*In hic tractus, circa dies aequinoctium, gnomon, septem pes altus, redde umbra non amplius quatuor pes longus.*

*Note* 1. Tell in what country the expanse of heaven does not extend above three ells, and though shalt be the great Apollo.

*Dico quis in terra spatium coelum non pateo amplius tres ulna, et sum magnus Apollo.*

Othos and Ephialtes are said to have been of a wonderful big-

*Othos et Ephialtes dico sum mirus magnitudo;*

doctrine concerning the use of these classes of numbers in such sentences is illustrated and confirmed in a note to the Grammatical Exercises, p. 107. Stereotype Edition. q. v. A. R. C.

ness; every month they grew nine inches; at length they endeavoured to climb up into heaven.

*per singuli mensis cresco novem digitus; tandem conor ascendo in coelum.*

*Note* 3. The wall is six feet higher than the rock, and the turrets are ten feet higher than the wall.

*Murus sum sex pes altior quam rupes, et turris sum deni pes altior quam murus.*

I am two feet taller than you, and you are a foot and a half taller than my brother.

*Ego sum duo pes longior quam tu, et tu sum sesquipes longior quam meus frater.*

The sun is many times bigger than the earth, and the earth is many times bigger than the moon.

*Sol sum multus pars major quam terra, et terra sum multus pars major quam luna.*

*Note* 4. By how much the greater the battle was, by so much more famous was the victory of Conon; the Lacedemonians being conquered, take to flight.

*Quantum major praelium sum, tantum clarior sum victoria Conon; Lacedaemonius victus, fuga capesso.*

The disease of the covetous man is scarcely curable; for the more he has, the more he desires.

*Morbus avarus vix sum medicabilis; nam quod plus habeo, id plus cupio.*

It is much more laborious to conquer one's self than an enemy; but the more difficult any thing, the more honourable it is.

*Sum multum operosior supero sui ipse quam hostis; sed quod quid sum difficilior, hoc praeclarior sum.*

This condition was so much the more grievous to them, by how much it was the later; for formerly they had quelled, in the Delphic war, the fury of the Gauls, terrible both to Asia and Italy.

*Hic conditio sum tantum amarior is, quantum sum serior; nam antea frango, in Delphicus bellum, violentia Gallus, terribilis et Asia et Italia.*

¶ The exploits of the Athenians were great and glorious enough, but yet somewhat less than they are represented; but because their writers were men of great parts and elo-

*Res gestus Atheniensis sum satis amplus et magnificus, verum tamen aliquantum minor quam fero; sed quia auctor sum homo magnus* 6 *ingenium*

quence, the actions of the Athenians are celebrated through the whole world for the greatest.

*et 6 facundia, factum Atheniensis celebro per totus orbis pro maximus.*

This garden is an hundred cubits long and sixty broad. Here are three beds, every one of which is three feet broad and five feet long; but the middle bed, which is one foot high, is the most pleasant; upon it I often sit and read the old poets with great pleasure.

*Hic hortus sum centum cubitus longus sexaginta latus. Hic sum tres area, qui singuli sum tres pes latus et quinque pes longus; sed medius area, qui sum unus pes altus, sum amoenus; super is saepe sedeo, et lego vetus poeta magnus cum voluptas.*

The ark in which Noah, his wife, his three sons, with their wives, and a few animals of every species, were saved, is recorded by Moses, the sacred historian, to have been 300 cubits long, 50 broad, and 30 (cubits) high.

The grotto in the island of Antiparos is a cavern 120 yards wide, 113 long, and about 60 yards high, and the descent to it is 480 yards deep.

There are about 400 famous pyramids in Egypt, three of which are great ones, the rest are smaller; the largest of the three great pyramids is 512 feet high, and 1028 feet broad at the bottom; the second pyramid is 342 feet high, and its broadest side at the bottom 622 feet long.

A great fortune in the hands of a fool is a great misfortune. The more riches a fool has the greater fool he is.

---

## *RULE V.*

* 19. THE comparative degree governs the ablative, which is resolved by *quam*.

Nothing is sweeter than liberty. *Nihil est dulcius libertate.*

Resolved thus: *Nihil est dulcius quam libertas.*

*Note* 1. The positive with the adverb *magis* sometimes governs the ablative; as, Virg. *O luce magis dilecta sorori.* Ovid. *Puraque magis pellucida gemma.*

*Note* 2. The comparative takes often the following or like ablatives; *opinione, spe, aequo, justo, solito, dicto, &c.* as, *opinione major, spe amplior, flagrantior aequo, tristior solito,* &c.

*Note* 3. *Nihil* with the comparative is elegantly put for *nemo* or *nullus*; as, *Nihil Virgilio doctius*; None more learned than Virgil.

*Note* 4. *Quam* after *plus, amplius, minus,* is elegantly suppressed; as, Ter. *Quis quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.* Virg. *Noctem non amplius unam.* Nep. *Minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus.*

*Note* 5. To the comparative the words *quam pro* are sometimes elegantly subjoined; as, Curt. *Majorem quam pro flatu sonum reddebant sylvae.*

*Note* 6. Comparatives, besides the ablative of comparison, take naturally

after them the case which their positives govern; as, Virg. *Thymo mihi dulcior Hyblac.* Senec. *Nihil est dignius magno viro placabilitate.*

*Note* 7. The comparative does not govern the ablative of itself, the preposition *prae* being understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Apul. *Unus prae caeteris fortior exsurgit.*

---

## *RULE VI.*

* 20. THESE adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, praeditus, captus,* and *fretus;* also *natus, satus, ortus, editus,* and the like, require the ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Worthy of praise. | *Dignus laude.* |
| Content with little. | *Contentus parvo.* |
| Endued with virtue. | *Praeditus virtute.* |
| Charmed with learning. | *Captus doctrinâ.* |
| Trusting to his strength. | *Fretus viribus.* |
| Born of a goddess. | *Natus Deâ.* |
| Descended of kings. | *Ortus regibus.* |

*Note* 1. Like adjectives are such as, *generatus, creatus, prognatus, procreatus, cretus, oriundus.*

*Note* 2. *Dignus, indignus, contentus,* take sometimes the genitive; as, Sil. *Proles digna Deum.* Virg. *Indignus avorum.* Liv. *Nec jam libertatis contentos.* See *captus* and *oriundus* also governing the genitive, in No. 14. note 2.

*Note* 3. The ablative is not governed by the adjectives mentioned in this rule, but by some preposition understood; such as, *a, ab, cum, in, e, ex, de.* And the genitives in note 2. are governed by some ablative understood.

| | |
|---|---|
| 19. The first epistle of Horace is sweeter than any honey. | *Primus epistola Horatius sum dulcior quivis mel.* |
| Nothing is sweeter to the mind than the light of truth. | *Nihil sum dulcior mens lux veritas.* |
| In civil broils, where there is need of action rather than deliberation, nothing is safer than despatch. | *In discordia civilis, ubi opus sum factum, magis quam consultum, nihil sum tutior festinatio.* |
| The country of Campania is the finest of all: nothing is softer than the air, nothing more fruitful than the soil, nothing more hospitable than the sea. | *Plaga Campania sum pulcher omnis: nihil sum mollior coelum, nihil uberior solum, nihil hospitalior mare.* |
| Amongst the Scythians no crime is more heinous than | *Apud Scytha nullus scelus sum gravior furtum;* |

theft; they just as much despise gold and silver as other mortals covet them.

*perinde aspernor aurum et argentum ac reliquus mortalis appeto.*

A stroke follows heavier than all that had happened before, through the violence of fire. Rome is divided into fourteen quarters, whereof three were levelled with the ground.

*Clades sequor gravior omnis qui ante accido, per violentia ignis. Roma divido in quatuordecim regio, qui tres solum tenus dejicio.*

20. The king was worthy of a laurel, worthy of a chariot; but Cæsar was now so great, that he might despise triumphs.

*Res sum dignus laurus, dignus currus; sed Cæsar jam tantus sum, ut possum contemno triumphus.*

Nothing is more worthy of a great and brave man, than clemency and readiness to be pacified.

*Nihil sum dignior magnus et praeclarus vir, clementia et placabilitas.*

To be always repining and complaining is unworthy of a man; but he who is endued with virtue, and satisfied with his lot, is truly rich and truly great.

*Semper murmuro et queror sum indignus homo; sed qui praeditus sum virtus, et contentus suus sors, sum vere dives et vere magnus.*

Sylla, trusting to the strength of his party, returned from Asia: whilst he staid at Athens, he kept Pomponius with him, being charmed with the politeness and learning of the youth.

*Sylla, fretus opes pars, redeo ex Asia: dum apud Athenae moror, habeo Pomponius suicum, captus et humanitas et doctrina adolescens.*

Ascanius, sprung from the ancient Trojan race, was born of a noble family; for his father Aeneas was descended of Anchises and Venus, and Anchises was descended of king Assaracus.

*Ascanius, editus antiquus Trojanus stirps, natus sum nobilis genus; nam pater Aeneas satus sum Anchises et Venus, et Anchises ortus sum rex Assaracus.*

If I be descended from a heavenly race, says Phaeton, give me a token of such a great descent. Your father's palace, replied his mother, is contiguous to our earth; go, and in-

*Si sum creatus coelestis stirps, inquam Phaeton, edo nota tantus genus. Paternus domus, respondeo mater, sum contermi-nus noster terra; gra-*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Barce; in which, though he did not lead a king's life, yet he led a life next to royal majesty. This clemency was no less useful to the conqueror than the conquered.

*qui, etsi non dego regius vita, tamen dego vita proximus regius majestas. Hic clementia non sum minus utilis victor quam victus.*

Sandrocottus, a man born of a mean family, was the assertor of their liberty; but after his success, he turned the title of liberty into slavery. This man being ordered to be slain by Alexander, whom he had offended, made his escape; after which fatigue, as he lay fast asleep, a lion of (a) huge bigness came up to him as he slept, and wiped off the sweat.

*Sandrocottus, vir natus humilis genus, sum auctor libertas; sed post victoria, verto titulus libertas in servitus. Hic vir jussus interficio ab Alexander, qui offendo, aufugio; ex qui fatigatio, cum jaceo captus somnus, leo ingens forma accedo ad dormiens, et detergo sudor.*

Duilius the admiral, not satisfied with the triumph of one day, ordered, during his whole life, when he returned from supper, torches to be lighted up, and flutes to play before him, as if he would triumph every day. Thus all mortals know the actions of those, who, endued with great power, pass their life in an exalted station.

*Duilius imperator, non contentus unus dies triumphus, jubeo, per omnis vita, ubi redeo a coena, funale praeluceo, et tibia praecino, quasi quotidie triumpho. Ita, cunctus mortalis nosco factum is, qui, praeditus magnus imperium, ago aetas in excelsus.*

The Macedonian war was by so much the more famous than the Carthaginian, by how much the Macedonians excelled the Carthaginians; wherefore the Romans raised more legions than usual, and sent for aid from Masinissa king of the Numidians, and all their other allies.

*Bellum Macedonicus sum tantum clarior Punicus, quantum Macedo antecedo Poeni; quare Romanus conscribo legio plus solitus, et accio auxilium a Masinissa rex Numidae, caeterpue omnis socius*

It was indeed a sort of prodigy, that, out of fifty children, not one was found, whom either paternal majesty, or the veneration of an old man, or the indulgence of a father, could re-

*Sum prorsus ostentum genus, ut, ex quinquaginta liberi, nemo invenio. qui aut paternus majestas, aut veneratio senex, aut indulgentia pater, a tantus im-*

claim from so great a barbarity. Was a father's name so contemptible among so many sons? But the cause of the parricide was more wicked than the parricide itself.

*manitas revoco. Sumne paternus nomen adeo vilis apud tot filius? Sed causa parricidium sum sceleratior ipse parricidium.*

The piety of a child is sweeter than incense, more delicious than odours, wafted by the gales, from a field of spices.

Wisdom is more precious than rubies, length of days is in her right hand, and in her left hand riches and honour. Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.

When Chiron, whose actions are worthy of honour, was handling the arrows of Hercules, one of them, that had been dipped in the poisonous blood of the Lernaean Hydra, fell upon his foot, and made a wound that was incurable, and pains that were intolerable, insomuch that he desired to die, but could not, because he was descended of two immortal parents.

---

## *RULE VII.*

21. An adjective of plenty, want, and privation, governs the genitive or ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Rich in horses. | *Dives equorum.* |
| Rich in lands. | *Dives agris.* |
| Void of reason. | *Inops rationis.* |
| Wanting words. | *Inops verbis.* |
| Free from faults. | *Immunis delictorum.* |
| Free from vices. | *Immunis vitiis.* |

To this rule belong,

I. Adjectives of PLENTY; such as, *abundans, beatus, copiosus, dives, ferax, fertilis, foecundus, foetus, frequens, frugifer, gravis, gravidus, immodicus, largus, praelargus, locuples, mactus, nimius, oneratus, onustus, opulentus, plenus, refertus, differtus, satur, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus, uber*; to which add, *benignus, firmus, instructus, laetus, liberalis, munificus, paratus, prodigus, prosper, satiatus, insatiatus, insatiabilis.*

II. Adjectives of WANT; such as, *egenus, indigus, inops, jejunus, inanis, modicus, pauper, sterilis, tenuis, vacuus.*

III. Adjectives of PRIVATION; such as, *cassus, expers, exsors, dissors, exsul, extorris, exhaeres, immunis, irritus, mutilus, nudus, orbus, truncus, viduus.* Of PARTICIPATION; as, *consors, particeps.* Of POWER and IMPOTENCE; as, *compos, pollens, potens; impos, impotens.* To which add, *liber, solutus. imparatus, infirmus, parcus, purus.*

Of these some govern,

1. The genitive only; as, *benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, praelargus.*

2. The ablative only; as, *beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus, paratus, imparatus instructus.*

3. The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, particeps, egenus, dissors, exsul, exhaeres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis, prosper, insatiatus, insatiabilis.*

4. The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, cassus, extorris, foetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, laetus, firmus, infirmus, satiatus, tenuis.*

5. The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *copiosus, dives, foecundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, mactus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, purus, vacuus, uber.*

*Note* 1. Neither the genitive nor the ablative, strictly speaking, depends upon the adjectives; for the genitive is governed by the ablative *re*, or *negotio*, understood; and these, and all other ablatives, by *in, a, ab, de*, or *ex*.

*Note* 2. Of the above adjectives, *copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, extorris, orbus, pauper, tenuis, foecundus, modicus, parcus, immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, potens, sterilis*, have frequently the preposition expressed; as, Cic. *Locus copiosus a frumento.* Id. *Ab equitatu firmus.* Id. *Ab omni re paratus.* Id. *Imparatus a pecunia.* Id. *Inops ab amicis.* Id. *Instructus a doctrina.* Hor. *Meo sum pauper in aere.* Id. *Tenuis in verbis serendis.* Plin *Parcus in victu, modicus in cultu.* Vell. *Liber a conspectu, immunis ab arbitris.* Cic. *Messana ab his rebus vacua atque nuda est.* Id. *Solutus a cupiditatibus, liber a delictis.* Quinct. *In affectibus potentissimus.* Ovid. *Herba potens ad opem.* Liv *In res bellicas potens.* Apul. *Civitas ab aquis sterilis.*

*Note* 3. *Benignus, prosper, laetus, gravis*, and some others, in a different sense, govern the dative, by No. 16.

*Note* 4. Some grammarians refer the adjectives governing the genitive only, to No. 14. And it would not have been repugnant to method and good order to have framed No. 20, so as to comprehend those which govern the ablative only.

1. This island is rich in cattle, well stored with goats, overflowing with milk, fertile in grain, fruitful in corn, and abounding in herbs. Its mountains are stored with brass and lead, and covered with woods.

*Hic insula sum dives pecus, copiosus capra, abundans lac, fertilis fruges, foecundus annona, et ferax herba. Mons is sum uber aes et plumbum, et frequens sylva.*

This man is blessed with wealth, and rich in money; his

*Hic homo sum beatus* 6 *divitiae, et opulentus v*

house is full of plate, replenished with precious things, and stuffed with jewels; his pockets are always loaded with silver, and strutted with gold.

This soldier formerly was frank of his money, abounding in wealth, profuse of his gold, lavish of praise, proud of victory, extravagant in his mirth, and too high-spirited; now he is loaded with years, cloyed with age, his wife is big with a boy.

These fields are rich in grain, fertile in corn, fruitful in victual, gay with grain and flowers; the cows and sheep are fat, their udders are strutted with milk.

II. Your brother is moderate in his desire, but yet he is in want of every thing, in need of help, poor in silver and gold, weak in strength, destitute of friends, but free from guilt.

No letter comes from you empty, or void of something useful, which I the rather admire and commend, because this age is barren in virtues, and fruitful in vices.

III. This gentleman is free of all vice, void of a fault, and clear of wickedness; yet he is in want of help, being banished his country, forced from his city and home, disappointed of his hope, deprived of his paternal estate, and destitute of all his possessions.

*cunia; domus is sum plenus vas, satur pretiosus res, et refertus* 6 *gemma; crumena sum semper onustus* 6 *argentum, et turgidus* 6 *aurum.*

*Hic miles olim sum liberalis pecunia, largus opes, prodigus aurum, munificus laus, tumidus* 6 *successus, immodicus laetitia, et nimius animus; nunc sum gravis* 6 *annus, satiatus aevum, uxor sum gravidus* 6 *puer.*

*Hic ager sum locuples* 8 *fruges, foetus* 6 *frumentum, frugifer,* 6 *alimentum, laetus fruges et flos; vacca et ovis sum pinguis, uber sum distentus* 6 *lac.*

*Tuus frater sum modicus votum, attamen sum egenus omnis res, indigus opis, pauper argentum et aurum, tenuis* 6 *vires, inops amicus, sed vacuus* 6 *crimen.*

*Nullus epistola venio a tu jejunus, aut inanis aliquis* 6 *res utilis, qui eo magis miror et laudo, quia hic seculum sum sterilis virtus, et foecundus vitium.*

*Hic vir sum immunis omnis* 6 *vitium, exsors culpa, et purus scelus; tamen sum indigus opis, exsul patria, extorris* 6 *urbs domusque, irritus spes, exhaeres paternus bonum, et expers omnis* 6 *fortuna.*

This young lady, deprived of her parents, and wanting a portion, was the sharer of my dangers, and shall be the partner of my kingdom; her life has not been free of troubles, nor is her breast void of love.

*Hic virgo, orbus* 6 *parens, et cassus* 6 *dos, sum particeps meus periculum, et sum consors regnum; vita non sum vacuus* 6 *molestia, nec pectus sum viduus* 6 *amor.*

The governor of the city, which is destitute of a garrison, is a man endued with virtue, abounding in wealth, but sparing of his money; mighty in war, but unable to restrain his passion; his mind however is generally calm, free from fear, and disengaged from all cares.

*Praefectus urbs, qui sum nudus* 6 *praesidium, sum vir compos virtus, pollens* 6 *opes, sed parcus pecunia; potens* 6 *bellum, sed impotens ira; animus tamen sum fere tranquillus, liber* 6 *terror, et solutus omnis* 6 *cura.*

Some animals are destitute of feet; but in Germany there are wild beasts that are called alces, whose shape is like that of goats, which have legs without joints, and [they] are void of horns.

*Quidam animal sum truncus pes; sed in Germania sum bellua qui appello alces, qui figura sum consimilis capra, qui habeo crus sine nodus, sumque mutilus* 6 *cornu.*

¶ The victorious Regulus, an honest man, and of ancient morals, lovely to all, though ignorant of the liberal arts, after he had widely spread the terror of his name, and slain a great number of the Carthaginian youth, sent a fleet to Rome loaded with abundance of spoil, and heavy with a triumph.

*Victor Regulus, probus vir, et vetus mos, amabilis cunctus, quamvis expers liberalis ars, quum late circumfero terror suus nomen, et caedo magnus vis juventus Punicus, ad Roma mitto classis onustus ingens* 6 *praeda, et gravis* 6 *triumphus.*

Alexander, though full of dust and sweat, yet taken with the pleasantness of the river Cydnus, threw himself into the cold water; then on a sudden a numbness seized his nerves: yet afterwards he recovered his health, and took Persepolis, the metropolis of the Persian empire, a famous city, filled with the spoils of the world.

*Alexander, etsi plenus pulvis ac sudor, tamen captus amoenitas flumen Cydnus, projicio sui in praefrigidus aqua; tum repente rigor occupo nervus: tamen postea recipio sanitas, et expugno Persepolis, caput Persicus regnum, urbs illustris, refertus* 6 *spolium terra orbis.*

Man, who is partaker of reason and speech, is more excellent than beasts, which [who] are void of reason and speech; but the mind of man has got reason in vain, unless he is mindful of his duty, and do the things that are agreeable to reason and nature.

*Homo, qui sum particeps ratio et oratio, sum praestans fera, qui sum expers ratio et oratio; sed animus homo sortior ratio frustra, nisi sum memor officium suus, et ago is qui sum consentaneus ratio et natura.*

The Egyptians boast that Egypt was always so temperate, that neither the winter's cold nor the heats of the summer sun did incommode its inhabitants; that the soil is so fertile, that no country is more fruitful in food for the use of man.

*Aegyptii praedico Aegyptus sum semper ita temperatus, ut neque hibernus frigus nec ardor aestivus sol premo is incola; solum ita foecundus, ut nullus terra sum ferax alimentum in usus homo*

Alcibiades, the Athenian, born of a great family, in a very great city, was much the handsomest of all the men of his time, fit for all things, and abounding in sense: it is agreed amongst all, that nobody was more eminent than he, either in vices or in virtues.

*Alcibiades, Atheniensis, natus summus genus, in amplus civitas, sum multum formosus omnis suus aetas, aptus ad res omnis; plenusque consilium: constat inter omnis, nihil sum excellens ille, vel in vitium vel in virtus.*

Historians say, that Cyrus king of Persia, who conquered the greatest part of Asia, waged war at last against the Scythians, whose queen was named Tomyris; that his army was routed, he himself slain; that his head was cut off, and thrown into a vessel full of blood.

*Auctor narro, Cyrus rex Persia, qui domo magnus pars Asia, gero bellum tandem contra Scytha, qui regina appello Tomyris; exercitus is deleo, ipse occido; caput is abscindo, et conjicio in vas plenus sanguis.*

All men hate those that are unmindful of a kindness, and all men love a mind grateful, and mindful of a good turn. Mutual benevolence is the great bond of human society; and without it life itself is grievous, full of fear and anxiety,

*Omnis odi is qui sum immemor beneficium, et omnis amo animus gratus, et memor beneficium. Mutuus benevolentia sum magnus vinculum humanus societas; et sine is vita ipse sum gravis, plenus timor*

| | |
|---|---|
| and void of all comfort and pleasure. Let us therefore avoid the crime of ingratitude above all others. | *et anxietas, et vacuus omnis* 6 *solatium et voluptas. Fugio igitur crimen ingratus animus prae reliquus.* |

If we lift up our eyes to the heavens, the glory of God shineth forth; if we cast them down upon the earth, it is full of his goodness. The hills and the valleys rejoice and sing; fields, rivers, and woods resound his praise.

Human life is never free from troubles; all places are full of fraud, treachery, and snares.

The Roman soldiery made Veteranio emperor, who was a good man, and of ancient morals, but void of all the liberal arts.

No man can be said to be great or powerful, who is not master of himself.

---

## II. *The Government of verbs.*

### § 1. Of personal verbs.

#### *RULE I.*

* 22. *Sum* when it signifies possession, property, part or duty, governs the genitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| This field is my father's, but the orchard belongs to my uncle. | *Hic ager est patris, at pomarium est avunculi.* |
| It is the property of a fool to persist in an error. | *Insipientis est perseverare in errore.* |
| It is the part of a poor man to number his flock. | *Pauperis est numerare pecus.* |
| It is the duty of soldiers to fight for their country. | *Militum est pro patria pugnare.* |

*Note* 1. Both in this and in the following rule, *officium*, *munus*, *opus*, *negotium*, *res*, *proprium*, or some other word, to be gathered from the sense, is understood, and sometimes expressed, as, Cic. *Principum munus est resistere levitati multitudinis.* Sometimes the preceding substantive is to be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* [liber] *fratris. Hoc pecus est* [pecus] *Meliboei.*

*Note* 2. To this rule may be referred the following and like expressions. Virg. *Grates persolvere dignas non opis est nostrae.* Caes. *Est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis.* Plin. *Moris antiqui fuit.* Cic. *Quae res evertendi reip. solent esse.* Sall. *Regium imperium, quod initio conservandae libertatis fuerat.* Id. *Quae postquam gloriosa modo, neque belli patrandi cognovit*, sup. *esse.*

23. These nominatives, *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, are excepted.

| | |
|---|---|
| It is my duty to confess. | *Meum est fateri.* |
| It is your part to forgive. | *Tuum est ignoscere.* |

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

## *RULE IV.*

26. *SUM* taken for *affero* [*to bring*] governs two datives, the one of a person, the other of a thing.

| | |
|---|---|
| The sea brings ruin upon mariners. | *Mare est exitio nautis.* |
| King Philip brought aid to the Romans. | *Philippus rex Romanis auxilio fuit.* |
| Every one minds his own pleasure. | *Curae est sua cuique voluptas.* |

*Note* 1. Other verbs sometimes govern two datives; such as, *forem, do, duco, habeo, tribuo, relinquo, verto, venio, mitto,* and some others.

*Note* 2. To this rule may be referred such phrases of naming as these, *Est mihi nomen Joanni.* Just. *Ptolemaeus, cui cognomentum Philopatori fuit.* Virg. *Ascanius, cui nunc cognomen Iulo additur.* As also the following or like expressions, *Esse cordi, usui, derisui, praedae, ludibrio,* sc. *alicui. Alicui dicto audiens esse. Habere curae, quaestui,* sc. *sibi. Canere receptui,* sc. *militibus,* &c.

*Note* 3. Instead of the dative of the THING, the nominative is sometimes used; as, Virg. *Idem amor exitium pecori est, pecorisque magistro;* for *exitio.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 22. The books which you see, were my cousin's, but now they are my brother's. | *Liber, qui video, sum consobrinus meus, sed nunc sum frater.* |
| Cæsar Augustus dwelt hard by the forum, in a house that had belonged to Calvus the orator. | *Cæsar Augustus habito juxta forum, in domus qui sum Calvus orator.* |
| Never was there a more bloody battle; at last, however, the victory was the Lacedemonians'. | *Nunquam sum cruentus praelium; ad postremum, tamen, victoria sum Lacedaemonii.* |
| It is the property of a coward to wish for death; but it is the property of a great soul to despise an injury. | *Sum timidus opto mors; sed sum magnus animus despicio injuria.* |
| It is the part of a foolish boy to love play, and neglect his studies; and it is the part of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to flay them. | *Sum stultus puer amo lusus, et negligo studium; et sum bonus pastor tondeo pecus, non deglubo.* |
| It is the duty of children to love and reverence their pa- | *Sum liberi amo et revereor parens, et sum disci-* |

rents, and it is the duty of a scholar to honour his master.

*pulus honoro magister.*

23. It is my part to teach and direct; it is thy part to study hard, if thou desirest to be a scholar.

*Sum meus doceo et praescribo; sum tuus studeo diligenter, si volo sum doctus.*

It is our part to regulate your courage; and it is your duty, not to pry into the orders of your officers, but submissively to obey.

*Sum noster rego vester virtus; et vester sum, non sciscitor imperium dux, sed modeste pareo.*

24. Look about, says Tellus, take pity on your own heaven: the poles are smoking, which if the fire shall destroy, your palaces will tumble down.

*Circumspicio, aio Tellus, misereor coelum vester: polus fumo, qui si ignis vitio, atrium vester ruo.*

Pity such great hardships; take pity also on me, and be not troublesome; I am busy in my own affairs.

*Misereor tantus labor; miseresco quoque ego, ac ne sum molestus; satago res meus.*

Xantippe, Socrates' wife, by day and by night, was sufficiently employed in womanish quarrels and brawlings.

*Xantippe, Socrates uxor, per dies perque nox, satago muliebris ira et molestia.*

25. Cæsar the dictator rivalled the greatest orators, and Augustus had a ready and fluent eloquence.

*Cæsar dictator sum aemulus summus orator, et Augustus promptus ac profluens eloquentia.*

Thou mayest rest with us upon the green grass; we have mellow apples, soft chesnuts, and plenty of curdled milk.

*Tu possum requiesco egocum super viridis frons; sum ego mitis pomum, mollis castanea, et pressus copia lac.*

26. Conon, when he heard that his country was invaded, did not inquire where he might live safely, but from whence he might bring relief to his countrymen.

*Conon, quum audio patria obsideo, non quaero, ubi ipse vivo tuto, sed unde sum praesidium civis suus.*

The loss, however, of the human race, was matter of grief to all the gods; and they asked, what would be the appear-

*Jactura, tamen, humanus genus, sum dolor omnis superi; et rogo, quis sum forma terra 6 morta-*

ance of the earth destitute of mortals?

*lis orbus.*

The vine is an ornament to the trees, grapes are an ornament to the vines, bulls to the flocks, and growing corns to the fertile fields.

*Vitis sum decus arbor, uva sum decus vitis, taurus grex, et seges pinguis arvum.*

*Note* 1. Micipsa imagined that Jugurtha would be an honour to his kingdom, and thought it a glory to himself, that he was called the friend and ally of the Roman people.

*Micipsa existimo Jugurtha forem gloria regnum suus, et duco sui gloria, sui voco amicus et socius populus Romanus.*

The complainers charged it as a crime against Gallius, that he had provided poison; and who is it that would not have imputed it to him as a fault?

*Accusator do crimen Gallius, is paro venenum; et quis sum, qui non verto is vitium?*

These gentlemen strut in state before your noses, and boast of their triumphs, just as if they reckoned them an honour to them, and not rapine.

*Hic vir incedo per os vester, et ostento suus triumphus, perinde quasi habeo is honor sui, ac non praeda.*

The girl was left to this woman as a pledge for the money; but it is charged upon you as laziness, that you write so few letters to your friends.

*Adolescentula relinquo hic mulier arrhabo pro argentum; sed tribuo tu ignavia, quod scribo tam rarus litera ad amicus.*

Chabrias too was reckoned amongst the greatest generals, and performed many things worthy of memory; but of these his invention in the battle which he fought at Thebes, when he came to the relief of the Boeotians, is the most famous.

*Chabrias quoque habeo in summus dux, geroque multus res dignus memoria; sed ex hic inventum is in praelium, qui apud Thebae facio, cum venio subsidium Boeotii, maxime eluceo.*

¶ After this a battle is fought: the Macedonians rush upon the sword, with contempt of an enemy so often conquered by them: Alexander himself attempted the most dange-

*Post hic praelium committo: Macedo ruo in ferrum, cum contemptus hostis toties a sui victus: Alexander ipse aggredior quisque periculosus; ubi*

rous things; where he saw the enemy thickest, there he always thrust himself, and had a mind the dangers should be his own, not his soldiers'.

*conspicio hostis confertus, eo sui semper ingero, voloque periculum sum suus, non miles.*

Rashness is the property of youth, prudence of old age; and to love riches is the property of a little and narrow soul, as to despise them, in comparison of virtue, is the property of a great and noble mind.

*Temeritas sum florens aetas, prudentia senectus; et amo divitiae sum parvus angustusque animus, ut contemno is, prae virtus, sum magnus et sublimis animus.*

Virginius begged that they would pity him and his daughter: that they would not hearken to the intreaties of the Claudian family, but to the intreaties of Virginia's relations, the tribunes, who being created for the assistance of the commons, did implore their protection and aid.

*Virginius oro ut misereor sui et filia: ne audio precis gens Claudius, sed precis Virginia cognatus, tribunus, qui creatus ad auxilium plebs, imploro is fides et auxilium.*

Part advised to call in Mithridates king of Pontus, part Ptolemy king of Egypt; but Mithridates was full of business of his own, and Ptolemy had always been an enemy to Syria: wherefore all agreed upon Tigranes king of Armenia; who being sent for, held the kingdom of Syria for eighteen years.

*Pars suadeo arcesso Mithridates rex Pontus, pars Ptolemaeus rex Aegyptus; sed Mithridates satago res suus, et Ptolemaeus semper sum hostis Syria: itaque omnis consentio in Tigranes rex Armenia; qui accitus teneo regnum Syria per octodecim annus.*

The nation of the Catti have robust bodies, compact limbs, a stern countenance, great vigour of mind, a great deal of sense and address; they confide more in their general than in their army: over the blood and spoils of an enemy they uncover their face, and boast that

*Gens Catti sum durus corpus, strictus artus, minax vultus, magnus vigor animus, multum ratio ac solertia; repono plus in dux quam in exercitus: super sanguis et spolium hostis revelo facies, et fero sui sum tum dignus patria*

they are then worthy of their country and their parents.

*et parens.*

Now I come to Cicero, who had the same contest with his contemporaries, that I have with you; for they admired the ancients, he preferred the eloquence of his own times.

*Nunc ad Cicero venio, qui idem pugna sum cum aequalis suus, qui ego sum tucum; ille enim antiquus miror, ipse suus tempus eloquentia antepono.*

The Macedonians had perpetual wars with the Thracians and Illyrians: the latter despised the infancy of the Macedonian king, and invaded the Macedonians; who being beat, brought out their king, and placed him behind their army in his cradle, and then renewed the dispute more briskly.

*Macedo sum assiduus bellum cum Thraces et Illyrii: posterior contemno infantia Macedonicus rex, et invado Macedo; qui pulsus, profero rex suus, et pono pone acies in cunae, et tunc repeto certamen acriter.*

As soon as Philip, king of Macedonia, entered upon the government, all people had great hopes of him, because of his parts, and because of the old oracles of Macedonia, which had given out that the state of Macedonia should be very flourishing under one of the sons of Amyntas.

*Ut Philippus, rex Macedonia, ingredior imperium, omnis sum magnus spes de ille, propter ipse ingenium, et propter vetus fatum Macedonia, qui cano status Macedonia sum florens sub unus filius Amyntas.*

After this Alexander orders himself to be adored, not saluted. Callisthenes was the most violent amongst the recusants; which thing brought ruin both on him, and on many great men of Macedonia; for they were all put to death under pretence of a plot.

*Deinde Alexander jubeo sui adoro, non salutor. Callisthenes sum acer inter recusans; qui res sum exitium et ille, et multus princeps Macedonia; siquidem omnis interficio sub species insidiae.*

He ordered Marcus Claudius the proconsul, to retain a sufficient garrison at Nola, and send away the rest of the soldiers, that they might not be a burden to their allies, and a charge to the government.

*Jubeo Marcus Claudius proconsul, retineo idoneus praesidium ad Nola, et dimitto caeter miles, ne sum onus socius, et sumptus respublica.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Cæsar, Octavianus, Mark Antony, and Lepidus divided the Roman empire among themselves. Asia and Egypt were Mark Antony's; he married Cleopatra, the most beautiful woman of her age, who, desirous of the empire of the world, stirred him up to make war against Cæsar Octavianus, which brought destruction on them both. | *Cæsar Octavianus, Marcus Antonius, et Lepidus partior Romanus imperium inter sui. Asia et Aegyptus sum Marcus Antonius; duco Cleopatra, pulcher foemina seculum suus, qui, cupidus imperium terra orbis, impello is gero bellum contra Cæsar Octavianus, qui sum pernicies uterque.* |

It is the part of a wise man to look to the end of things. When, therefore, the fatherless call upon thee; when the widow's heart is sunk, and she imploreth thy assistance; it is thy duty to pity her affliction, and relieve those who have no helper.

Every thing is common among ants. An ant never works for herself, but for the whole society of which she is a member. Whereas bees, of which so wonderful stories are told, have each of them a hole in their hives; their honey is their own, and every bee is wholly taken up about her own concerns.

Idleness is the parent of want and pain, but the labour of virtue bringeth forth pleasure. The hand of the diligent defeateth want, prosperity and success are the industrious man's attendants. But the slothful man is a burden to himself; he loitereth about, and knoweth not what he would do.

---

## *RULE V.*

27. A VERB signifying advantage or disadvantage governs the dative.

| | |
|---|---|
| I am not profitable to myself. | *Mihi minus proficio.* |
| Fortune favours the brave. | *Fortuna favet fortibus.* |
| Wise men commaud their passions. | *Sapientes imperant cupiditatibus suis.* |
| Cæsar threatened the eagle-bearer. | *Aquilifero Cæsar comminatus est.* |
| Fools trust to dreams. | *Stulti fidunt somnis.* |
| The girl married her cousin-german. | *Consobrino suo nupsit puella.* |
| It is the part of a good man to satisfy his conscience. | *Est boni viri satisfacere conscientiae suae.* |
| I was present at the battle. | *Aderam pugnae.* |
| The last hand is put to the work. | *Accessit operi manus extrema.* |
| Man, who is partaker of reason, excels the brutes. | *Homo, qui rationis particeps est, antecellit bestiis.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| A boy takes pleasure to play with his equals. | *Puer gestit paribus colludere.* |
| The sailors ply the oars. | *Nautae incumbunt remis.* |

To this rule belong a great variety of verbs, mostly neuter, *viz.*

I. Verbs of various significations, importing,

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as, *proficio, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo* to provide for or against; also, *noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their contraries; as, *faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, annuo, parco, studeo, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, supplico, subparasitor;* also, *auxilior, adminiculor;* also, *derogo, detraho, invideo, aemulor.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, and RESIST; as, *impero, praecipio, mando, moderor* to restrain; also, *pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morigeror, obsecundo;* also, *famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor;* also, *repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor;* and with the poets, *pugno, certo, bello, contendo, concurro, luctor.*

4. To THREATEN, or be ANGRY with; as, *minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.*

5. To TRUST; as, *fido, confido, credo;* also, *diffido, despero.*

6. A great many other verbs that cannot be reduced to any distinct head; such as, *nubo, excello, haereo, cedo, operor, praestolor, praevaricor, recipio,* to promise, *pepigi* to promise, *renuncio, respondeo, tempero, vaco, convicior, aio, luceo, sapio, sordeo, dormio,* &c.

II. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE; as, *satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico.*

III. All the compounds of the verb SUM, except *possum;* as, *adsum, prosum, obsum, desum, insum, intersum, praesum, supersum,* &c.

IV. A great many verbs compounded with these nine

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

harm to none, to displease nobody, neither to hurt the miserable, nor to lay snares for the innocent.

*ceo miser, neque insidior innocuus.*

2. A good man favours the good, and rejoiceth with them upon any happy event; he is always disposed to spare the vanquished, and forgive what is past; he neither entertains resentment, nor flatters any one; he knows, that those who detract from good men, derogate from themselves; he therefore envies nobody, but zealously imitates the most worthy.

*Bonus faveo bonus, et gratulor is de aliquis res felix; semper paratus sum parco victus, et ignosco praeteritus; neque indulgeo ira, neque adulor quisquam; nosco is, qui detraho bonus, derogo sui; ideo invideo nemo, sed aemulor dignus.*

It is the property of a generous man to assist the poor, to aid the needy, to succour the distressed, to heal their wounds, to patronize the orphans, to help his countrymen, to study their advantage, and to pray to God, that he would second his endeavours; whilst the covetous man flatters and caresses the rich, and applauds himself when he looks at his money in his chest.

*Sum generosus auxilior pauper, subvenio inops, succurro miser, medeor vulnus, patrocinor orbus* 6 *parens, opitulor civis, studeo commodum, et supplico Deus, ut annuo ausum; dum avarus assentor et blandior dives, et plaudo sui, cum contemplor nummus in arca.*

3. God hath commanded us to rule our lusts, to govern our spirit, to listen to his word, to obey his admonitions, to be subject to his laws, to be submissive to parents, to comply with their will, to serve and wait upon them, and obey their orders, and not to be a slave to passion.

*Deus praecipio ego ut impero cupiditas, moderor animus, ausculto verbum is, pareo monitum, obedio lex, obtempero parens, obsecundo voluntas is, famulor et ministro ille, et obsequor imperium, neque servio iracundia.*

A Christian ought to oppose vicious pleasure, to struggle against and withstand the beginnings of anger, to resist evil,

*Christianus debeo repugno vitiosus voluptas, reluctor et obsto principium ira, resisto malum, adversor*

to oppose the corrupt practices of those who despise virtue and religion, and not to be a slave to lust, nor humour wicked men.

*pravus mos is qui contemno virtus et religio, neque inservio cupiditas, neque morigeror malus homo*

4. & 5. The general was angry and enraged at the soldiers, he threatened the standard-bearers, he threatened the runaways; but as he durst not depend on the courage of his men, he resolved to retreat, and trust to the night and the darkness. Though at first he did not believe the things that were said concerning the enemy, yet now he began to give up his affairs for lost, and despair of safety.

*Dux succenseo et irascor miles, minor signifer, comminor fugiens; sed cum non audeo confido virtus miles, statuo recedo, et fido nox et tenebrae. Quamvis primo non credo is qui narro de hostis, tamen nunc coepi diffido res suus, et despero salus.*

6. I cannot restrain my tongue, says the gentleman to his companion; the sun shines on the wicked, and few are wise for themselves. I bewail the misfortune of the unhappy young lady; she excelled all the girls of the east, she was taken up with the liberal sciences, and was always intent upon philosophy.

*Non possum tempero lingua, aio vir comes; sol luceo sceleratus, et pauci sapio sui. Doleo casus infelix virgo; excello omnis puella oriens, operor liberalis studium, et sem per vaco philosophia.*

Many young men courted this girl, and presents sent by many lovers were disdained by her; at length, however, she yielded to the gentle command of her parents, and married a Roman knight; but the event did not answer people's expectation; he was a bad husband, and the poor creature has bid adieu to life; my voice clings to my jaws!

*Multus juvenis peto hic puella, et munus missus a multus procus sordeo ille; tandem, tamen, cedo lenis imperium parens, et nubo Romanus eques; sed res non respondeo homo opinio; sum durus maritus, et miser renuncio vita; vox faux haereo!*

II. An honest man endeavours to satisfy his creditors, and to act well for the com-

*Probus vir conor satisfacio creditor, et benefacio respublica, qui sum pul-*

monwealth, which is a fine thing; he endeavours also to speak well of good men, to revile nobody, and to do an ill turn to none. God often blesses such a man, which he does when he gives him prosperity, enlarges his fortune, and shews him favour.

*cher; conor quoque benedico bonus homo, maledico nemo, et malefacio nullus. Deus saepe benedico talis homo, qui facio, cum do prosper, augeo bonum, faveoque.*

III. Parents often outlive their children; and as some men have a weakness of judgment, and others want prudence, an old man of this sort ought to be present at public deliberations, and have the charge of the thing to be done; not that he may have it in his power to hurt any one, but that he may be able to do good to many; and God sometimes favours such an undertaking.

*Parens saepe supersum liberi; et ut quidam homo insum imbecillitas judicium, et alius desum prudentia, senex ejusmodi debeo intersum publicus consilium, et praesum res faciendus; non ut possum obsum quivis, sed ut possum prosum multus; et Deus nonnunquam adsum talis inceptum.*

IV. *Ad.* The thing pleased me much; for the young man had resolved to rest in your opinion, and adhere to virtue. Fortune, therefore, smiled upon him, and favoured his first attempt; and great courage was added to his men, who rode up to the very gates of the city.

*Res arrideo ego valde; nam adolescens statuo acquiesco sententia tuus, et adhaereo virtus. Fortuna, igitur, affulgeo ille, et aspiro primus labor, et ingens animus accedo miles, qui adequito ipse porta urbs.*

The enemy threw themselves into the river, and endeavoured to swim to land. Our general returned victorious with twelve serjeants, who attended him, and all rose up before him, as he came into his tent, where he sat down to a feast. The grandees sat by him, and six boys waited at table.

*Hostis projicio sui in fluvius, et conor adno terra. Noster dux redeo victor cum duodecim lictor, qui appareo is, et omnis assurgo is, veniens in tabernaculum, ubi accumbo epulae. Primores assideo ille, et sex puer adsto mensa.*

*Ante* and *Con.* Virtue, which is always consistent with itself, excels all other things, and the

*Virtus, qui semper consono sui, anteeo omnis alius res, et dos anim-*

endowments of the mind excel strength of body; but they often beget pride. There was a comedian in Greece, of a celebrated character, with whom I lived a long time, who far excelled most actors and musicians: he used to boast and say, Let the boys play with their equals, and sing to themselves and the muses.

*antecello vires corpus; at saepe gigno superbia. Sum histrio in Graecia, celeber fama, qui diu convivo, qui longe antesto plerique actor et citharoedus: soleo glorior et dico, Puer colludo par, et concino sui et musa.*

*In.* This villain mocks and insults all good men; he is said never to have groaned or wept at the death of a friend; but he gapes after gain, and sleeps on his bags of money; he obstinately persists in, and pursues his former course, though danger seems to hang and hover over him; for a pain has lately settled in his feet, which obliges him to lean on a staff, as a soldier leans on a spear, or as a house leans on pillars.

*Hic scelestus illudo et insulto omnis bonus; dico nunquam ingemo aut illachrymo mors amicus; sed inhio lucrum, et indormio saccus pecunia; pertinaciter insto, et inhaereo prior vestigium, etiamsi periculum videor impendeo et immineo is; nam dolor nuper insideo pes, qui cogo is innitor baculum, ut miles insisto hasta, aut ut tectum incumbo columna.*

*Inter.* There was an alliance for a long time betwixt this people and their neighbours: a war, however, at last broke out between them; they joined battle in a valley full of ferns, which use to grow in neglected fields: at first the sun was shining, and the gold glittered on their bright armour; many were slain on both sides, who were all buried in pits that lay betwixt the hills, and more would have fallen, had not night come on during the time of the battle.

*Amicitia diu intercedo hic populus cum finitimus: bellum, tamen, tandem exorior inter is; committo praelium in vallis plenus* 6 *filix, qui soleo innascor neglectus ager: primo sol splendeo, et aurum intermico fulgens arma; multus interficio utrinque, qui omnis sepelio in fovea qui interjaceo mons, et plus cado, nisi nox intervenio praelium*

*Ob.* The lot that has fallen to men is mortal: mortality occurs, nay often occurs to our

*Sors qui obvenio homo sum mortalis: mortalitas occurro, imo occurso ani-*

thought, and all men struggle against death in vain; but yet vices creep in upon us, wickedness stands in the way of piety, one decries and depreciates the merits of another, few withstand the allurements of pleasure, and nobody is disposed to die for his country.

*mus, et omnis obluctor mors frustra; attamen vitium obrepo ego, scelus obsto pietas, alter obstrepo et obtrecto laus alter, pauci obsisto blanditiae voluptas, et nemo sum paratus occumbo mors pro patria.*

*Prae.* Mercury is said to preside over gain; but a fair reputation is better than riches. Masters ought and use to lead the way to their scholars, and the boy is worthy of honour who outshines his ancestors, or outstrips his contemporaries. Providence over-rules human devices, and certain signs sometimes go before certain events.

*Mercurius dico praesideo lucrum; sed bonus existimatio praesto divitiae. Praeceptor debeo et soleo praeeo discipulus, et puer sum dignus honor qui praeluceo majores, aut antecello aequalis. Providentia praevaleo humanus consilium, et certus signum interdum praecurro certus res.*

*Sub* and *Super.* Wave succeeds wave, grief comes in the midst of joy, old age and poverty steal upon you: but do not sink under the burthen; for your farm, which lies under the hill, is far better than its rent, and will find a purchaser; and as you are content with little, if but a small part of the price shall be left to you, you will be richer than a covetous man, whom the wealth of Croesus would not satisfy.

*Unda succedo unda, luctus supervenio laetitia, senectus et paupertas subrepo tu: sed ne succumbo onus; nam ager tuus, qui subjaceo mons, longe supercurro vectigal, et invenio emptor; et cum sum contentus parvum, si modo exiguus pars pretium supersto tu, sum ditior avarus, qui opes Croesus non sufficio.*

*Note* 3. All the rivers run into the sea, and we all hasten to one habitation. My brother enlisted in the army, went to a battle; but being worsted, he hastened to the shore, fled into Africa, and went to the city Carthage. His friends, to whom the business chiefly belonged,

*Omnis fluvius curro in mare, et ego omnis sedes propero ad unus. Meus frater eo in militia, vado in praelium; sed victus, festino ad littus, fugio in Africa, et pergo ad urbs Carthago. Amicus, ad qui res maxime pertineo,*

afterwards brought him back; his years are now on the decline towards old age. Virtue aims at high things.

*postea reduco; annus jam vergo in senium. Virtus ad arduus tendo.*

¶ So great a madness had seized their cruel minds, that they did not spare the age, which even enemies would have spared, and carried on a destructive war against their children, and children's mothers, for whom wars use to be undertaken. So great was the havock, that the gods seemed to have agreed, together with men, for the destruction of the parricides.

*Tantus rabies invado ferus animus, ut non parco aetas, qui etiam hostis parco, geroque interneci vus bellum cum liberi, liberique mater, pro qui bellum soleo suscipio. Tantus strages sum, ut deus videor consentio, pariter cum homo, in exitium parricida.*

The chief of the fathers said, that his speech was worthy of the consular office, worthy of so many consulships, worthy of his whole life, full of honour; that other consuls had, by betraying their dignity, flattered the common people; that he, mindful of the majesty of the fathers, had made a speech suitable to the times.

*Primores pater dico, concio is dignus sum imperium consularis, dignus tot consulatus, dignus totus vita, plenus* 6 *honor; alius consul, per proditio dignitas, adulor plebs; is, memor majestas pater, habeo oratio accommodatus tempus.*

Polycletus, a man terrible to our own soldiers, is sent into Britain; but he was an object of derision to the enemy, amongst whom the power of freed men was not yet known; and they wondered that an army should obey a slave.

*Polycletus, vir terribilis noster miles, mitto in Britannia; sed sum irrisus hostis, apud qui potentia libertus nondum cognosco; mirorque quod exercitus obedio servitium.*

The Christian religion not only commands us to help our friends, but to relieve those that are enemies to us; for so we shall make them our friends, and shall promote love, kindness, peace, and good will

*Christianus religio non modo praecipio ego opitulor amicus, sed succurro is qui sum inimicus ego; sic enim reddo is amicus, et promoveo amor, benignitas, pax et benevolentia*

among men; which things pleased God.

*inter homo; qui placeo Deus.*

The Parthians were formerly the most obscure among the people of the east. When the empire of Asia was transferred from the Medes to the Persians, they were a prey to the conquerors; finally, they were subject to the Macedonians; that it may seem strange to any one, that they are arrived to such a flourishing condition, that they now command those nations to which they formerly were under subjection.

*Parthi sum olim obscurus inter populus oriens. Cum imperium Asia transfero a Medi ad Persa, sum praeda victor; postremo, servio Macedo; ut videor mirus quivis, is proveho ad tantus felicitas, ut nunc impero is gens qui olim servio.*

He that resisteth his own evil inclinations, obeyeth God; and deserves greater praise than the general who vanquishes mighty armies, and takes the strongest cities, but serves his passions, which he cannot govern.

*Qui repugno suus malus affectus, obedio Deus; et mereor magnus laus quam dux qui fundo magnus copiae, et expugno munitus urbs, sed servio cupiditas, qui non possum moderor.*

Taken with the sweetness of that power, you suffer any wickedness to lurk under it. Let them say the same things, which they bawl out here, in the camp, and amongst the soldiers; and let them corrupt our armies, and not suffer them to obey their commanders; since that is at least the liberty of Rome, not to reverence the senate, the magistrates, or the laws.

*Captus dulcedo is potestas, sino quilibet scelus lateo sub is. Dico idem, qui vociferor hic, in castra, et apud miles; et corrumpo exercitus, nec patior is pareo dux; quoniam is demum sum libertas Roma, non revereor senatus, magistratus, aut lex.*

The Lacedemonians, after the manner of mankind, the more they have, the more they desire; for, not content with the accession of the Athenian powers, they began to affect the

*Lacedaemonius, de mos genus humanus, quod plus habeo, id plus cupio; nam, non contentus accessio opes Atheniensis, coepi affecto imperium totus Asia, qui*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Is it not better to die by bravery, than by disgrace to lose a miserable and inglorious life, after you have been the sport of other men's insolence? But surely we have the victory in our own hands; our age is fresh, our minds are vigorous: On the other hand, all things are decayed to them; there is need only of a beginning. Who of mortals, that has the spirit of a man, can endure that they should have an excess of wealth, and that a private estate is wanting to us even for necessaries? In short, what have we left except a miserable life?

---

## *RULE VI.*

28. A VERB signifying actively governs the accusative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Love God. | *Ama Deum.* |
| Reverence your parents. | *Reverere parentes.* |

*Note* 1. The infinitive or a sentence sometimes supplies the place of the accusative; as, Gell. *Poenitere tanti non emo;* for *poenitentiam.* Ter. *Feci e servo libertus ut esses mihi;* for *feci te libertum.*

*Note* 2. NEUTER VERBS have sometimes an accusative: 1. Of their own or the like signification; as, *vivere vitam, gaudere gaudium, servire servitutem, ire viam longam, pugnare praelia, garrire nugas, prandere olus, coenare aprum, sitire sanguinem,* &c. 2. When taken in a metaphorical, or in an active sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin, creput sulcos et vineta, saltare Cyclopa, sonat vitium fidelia, olet hircum, spirat deam: Abolere maculam, laborare arma, clamare aliquem, horret mare, sensum pulchre calleo, medias fraudes palluit,* &c. But some preposition, such as *ad, in, ob, circa, per,* is always understood.

*Note* 3. The accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, alia, caetera, omnia,* are often governed by *propter, ob,* or *circa,* understood; as, Ter. *Num id lacrumat virgo?* Plaut. *Scio quid erres.* Hor. *Quicquid delirant reges plectuntur Achivi.*

*Note* 4. ADVERBS are often joined to verbs, nouns, and other parts of speech, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

*Note* 5. The poets frequently use the neuter gender of adjectives adverbially, or instead of adverbs; as, Virg. *Torvumque repente clamat;* for *torve.* Hor. *Mens laetatur turbidum;* for *turbide.* Virg. *Et pede terram crebra ferit;* for *crebro.* Id. *Transversa tuentibus hircis;* for *transverse.*

*Note* 6. The accusative after active verbs, in some figurative expressions, is governed, not by the verb, but by some preposition understood, while the true accusative to the verb is suppressed; thus, *Ferire, icere, percutere foedus,* is put for *Ferire,* &c. *porcum ad sanciendum foedus. Plangere funera, damna;* for, *Plangere pectus ad funera, ad damna. Conserere praelium;* for, *conserere manum ad praelium faciendum.*

* 29. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| I remember the battle. | *Recordor pugnam.* |
| I remember the victory. | *Recordor victoriae.* |
| I mind the place. | *Memini locum.* |
| I mind the day. | *Memini diei.* |
| He remembers the time. | *Reminiscitur tempus.* |
| He remembers the night. | *Reminiscitur noctis.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| We forget reproaches. | *Obliviscimur contumelias.* |
| We forget hardships. | *Obliviscimur laborum.* |

*Note* 1. *Memini*, when it signifies *to make mention of*, takes the genitive or the ablative with *de*, but never the accusative; as, Caes. *Cujus supra meminimus.* Quinct. *De quibus multi meminerunt.*

*Note* 2. The verbs belonging to this rule are generally esteemed neuter, and when they take the accusative, *ad*, or *quod ad*, is understood; when they take the genitive, *quod ad negotium*, or *in negotio*, is suppressed.

*Note* 3. The phrase, *Venit mihi in mentem*, seems someway allied to this rule, and admits of three varieties, viz. *Venit mihi in mentem haec res, hujus rei, de hac re:* to the last two may be understood *memoria*, or *recordatio;* as, Cic. *Si quid in mentem veniet.* Id. *Mihi solet venire in mentem illius temporis, quo fuimus una.* Plaut. *In mentem venit de speculo.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 28. I love virtue, thou seekest praise, he despises pleasure, we practise charity, ye fear God, they honour the king. | *Amo virtus, quaero laus, contemno voluptas, colo charitas, timeo Deus, honoro rex.* |
| The boy deserves praise, the slave shall suffer punishment, the man defames his wife, care attends money, pride accompanies honours. | *Puer mereor laus, servus patior poena, vir criminor uxor, cura sequor pecunia, superbia comitor honor.* |
| God wisely governs the world, riches sometimes procure envy, birds do not every where build their nests, the dogs nimbly pursue the hare. | *Deus sapienter guberno mundus, divitiae interdum contraho invidia, avis non ubivis struo nidus, canis strenue sector lepus.* |
| Discord always produces strife, strife generally begets hatred, quarrels often break up friendship, honours commonly change manners. | *Discordia semper pario lis, lis plerumque genero odium, jurgium saepe dissolvo amicitia, honor vulgo muto mos.* |
| 29. A good man easily forgets injuries, but always remembers a good turn: a wicked man sees the faults of others, and forgets his own, but at length, with sorrow, shall he remember his villanies. | *Bonus vir facile obliviscor injuria, sed semper reminiscor beneficium: improbus cerno vitium alius et obliviscor suus, sed tandem cum dolor recordor flagitium suus.* |
| Cæsar settled the differences among the Aeduans, and having exhorted them to forget their disputes and quarrels, he re- | *Cæsar compono lis inter Aedui, et cohortatus ut obliviscor controversia ac dissensio, redeo ad castra.* |

turned to the camp. They remembered his advice, and complied with his admonitions.

*Ille memini consilium, et pareo monitum.*

¶ In the mean time the Roman people received a terrible stroke from the Parthians: nor can we complain; for, after Crassus had pitched his camp at Nicephorium, deputies sent by king Orodes advised him to remember the treaties made with Pompey and Sylla. But the consul was gaping after the Parthian gold.

*Interim Romanus populus accipio gravis vulnus a Parthi: nec possum queror; nam postquam Crassus pono castra apud Nicephorium, legatus missus a rex Orodes denuncio ut memini foedus percussus cum Pompeius et Sylla. Sed consul inhio Parthicus aurum.*

Let not the glare of gold and silver dismay you, which neither protects nor wounds. In the very host of the enemy we shall find our troops, the Britons will espouse their own cause, the Gauls will reflect on their former liberty, and the Germans will abandon the Romans.

*Ne fulgor aurum atque argentum terreo tu, qui neque tego, neque vulnero. In ipse acies hostis invenio noster manus, Britanni agnosco suus causa, Galli recordor prior 4 libertas, et Germani desero Romanus.*

Antiochus, though he approved of Annibal's advice, yet would not act according to his counsel, lest the glory of the victory should be Annibal's, and not his own. He was conquered therefore, and remembered Annibal's counsel when it was too late.

*Antiochus, tametsi probo consilium Annibal, tamen nolo ago ex sententia ille, ne gloria victoria sum Annibal, et non suus. Vinco igitur et memini consilium Annibal cum sum sero.*

Remember the counsel which I gave, it will profit thee very much if thou dost not forget it: obey the laws of almighty God; obey the king and all [other] subordinate magistrates, in all things that are lawful; resist the beginnings of anger, and yield not to the allurements of pleasure.

*Memini 4 consilium qui do, prosum tu plurimum si 4 is non obliviscor: obedio lex omnipotens Deus; obedio rex et omnis [alius] inferior magistratus, in omnis qui sum licitus; repugno principium ira, et ne cedo blanditiae voluptas.*

Such was the greatness of

*Tantus sum magnitudo*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*delector, gaudeo, vivo, victito, fido, confido, exu to, sto, consto, consisto, cedo, supersedeo, laboro.*

*Note* 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently take the genitive; as, Caes. *Egere auxilii.* Cor. *Opis indigent.* Also among the more ancient writers *scateo* and *careo*; as, Lucret. *Terra scatet ferarum.* Plaut. *Tui carendum erat.* Sometimes *careo* and *egeo* take the accusative; as, Plaut. *Id careo.* Gell. *Multa egeo.*

*Note* 2. *Potior* sometimes governs the genitive; as, Sall. *Potiri urbis*, to make himself master of the city. Id. *Potiri hostium*, to get his enemies into his power. Cic. *Potiri rerum*, to have the chief command.

*Note* 3. *Potior*, *fungor*, *vescor*, and *epulor*, sometimes take the accusative; as, Cic. *Gens urbem nostram potitura.* Tac. *Ut munera fungerentur.* Plin. *Si caprinum jecur vescantur.* Id. *Pullos epulari.* As also, among the more ancient writers, *uter*, *abutor*, and *fruor*; as, Plaut. *Uteris, ut voles, operam meam.* Ter. *Operam abutitur.* Id. *Ingenium frui.*

*Note* 4. The ablative is not governed by these verbs, but by some preposition understood; such as, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*. And when any of these verbs takes the genitive, some ablative, such as *re*, *negotio*, *causa*, *praesentia*, *ope*, *copia*, *imperio*, or the like, with a preposition, is understood.

*Note* 5. With some of these verbs the preposition is frequently expressed; as, Liv. *Ne a metu vacarent.* Cic. *Cum constemus ex animo et corpore.* Id. *Cum graviter ex intestinis laborarem.* Id. *Cujus in vita nitebatur salus civitatis.* Id. *In virtute recte gloriamur.*

*Note* 6. The verbs *fido*, *confido*, *innitor*, *cedo*, *vaco*, instead of the ablative, take frequently the dative, as was taught No. 27.

1. Many men abound in gold and silver, whose houses are full of wickedness.

*Multus homo abundo aurum atque argentum, qui domus scelus affluo.*

Some men flow in wealth, nay, overflow in money, and yet desire those things most with which they abound.

*Quidam homo circumfluo opes, imo superfluo pecunia, et tamen desidero is maxime qui abundo.*

Neglected sores use to swarm with vermin, and neglected fields with noxious weeds; but yet this garden abounds in apples.

*Neglectus ulcus soleo scateo vermis, et neglectus ager noxius herba; sed tamen hic hortus exubero pomum.*

This man pleads the cause with great vigour; he is all bedewed with sweat; he is over copious in his language; his discourse, however, abounds with all manner of ornaments.

*Hic vir ago causa strenue; diffluo sudor; redundo eloquium; oratio tamen abundo omnis ornamentum.*

2. Nature needs few things; he however that wants friends, and he that is weak in judgment, or is disappointed of his

*Natura egeo pauci; qui autem careo amicus, et qui deficior ratio, aut destituor spes, indigeo consi-*

expectations, stands in need of advice; but to be free from a fault is a great comfort.

*lium; sed vaco culpa magnus sum solatium.*

3. We ought to use diligence, and not to abuse time; the life which we enjoy is short, let us therefore do our duty carefully; thus at length we shall obtain the golden fleece, we shall feed on milk and honey.

*Debeo utor diligentia, et non abutor tempus; vita qui fruor sum brevis, fungor igitur officium sedulo; sic tandem potior aurens vellus, vescor lac et mel.*

5. Men ought to depend on virtue rather than blood; for if any one persist in this practice, and take pleasure in equity, he deserves praise. But fools often labour under this distemper, that they glory in their faults, rejoice at other men's misfortunes, are delighted with vain hope, and exult in success.

*Homo debeo nitor virtus potius quam sanguis; nam si quis innitor hic ars, et gaudeo aequitas, mereor laus. Sed stultus saepe is morbus laboro, ut glorior vitium suus, laetor alienus malum, delector vanus spes, et exulto successus.*

The rich feast on dainty dishes, but the poor live on barley bread, nay, some live on husks. Let us lay aside prolixity of words; for many poor people, descended of honourable parents, have retired from the city, on account of the dearth of corn.

*Dives epulor opimus dapes, sed pauper victito hordeaceus panis, imo quidam vivo siliqua. Supersedeo multitudo verbum; nam multus pauper, prognatus honestus parens, cedo urbs, propter caritas annona.*

Some men trust to strength of body, and the stability of fortune, as stags trust to their running; brave men, say they, descend from brave men, and a pretty girl cannot be born of a disgraceful mother.

*Quidam homo confido firmitas corpus, et stabilitas fortuna, ut cervus fido cursus; fortis, inquam, creor fortis, et formosus puella non possum nascor mater pudendus.*

This field consists of vineyards and woods; I might retain it, but I will stand by my bargain and my promise; thus good men will praise me, the poor will bless me.

*Hic ager consto vinea et sylva; possum retineo, sed sto pactum et promissum; sic bonus ego laudo, pauper ego benedico.*

¶ In Thessaly, Cæsar's army enjoyed very good health,

*In Thessalia, Cæsar exercitus utor bonus valetu-*

and very great plenty of water, and abounded in every kind of provision, except corn.

*do, summusque copia aqua, abundoque omnis genus commeatus, praeter frumentum.*

Great armies need great generals. Though Cæsar's soldiers had long wanted corn, and had endured the most pinching famine, yet no word was heard from them unworthy of the majesty of the Roman people, or of their former victories.

*Magnus exercitus egeo magnus dux. Quamvis Cæsar miles diu careo frumentum, et sustento extremus fames, tamen nullus vox audio ab is indignus majestas populus Romanus, aut superior victoria.*

He seems to me to live, and enjoy life, who, intent on business, pursues the glory of some famous action or useful art. But in the great multitude of affairs, nature has pointed out different ways. It is a glorious thing to act well for the republic, and it is no despicable thing to speak well.

*Is videor ego vivo, et fruor anima, qui, intentus negotium, quaero gloria aliquis praeclarus facinus aut bonus ars. Sed in magnus copia res, natura ostendo diversus iter. Sum pulcher benefacio respublica, et non sum absurdus bene dico.*

The victory was the Thebans'; but Epaminondas, whilst he performed the office, not only of a general, but also of a very gallant soldier, was grievously wounded. It is uncertain whether he was a better man or general; he was frugal of the public money; he was more greedy of glory than of riches.

*Victoria sum Thebanus; sed Epaminondas, dum fungor officium, non tantum dux, verum etiam fortis miles, graviter vulnero. Sum incertus sumne vir bonus an dux; sum parcus publicus pecunia; sum cupidus gloria quam divitiae.*

After this, Vitellius obtained the government, a man of an honourable rather than a noble family; he, as he had a mind to be like Nero, was slain by Vespasian's generals, and, being thrown into the Tiber, wanted common burial.

*Dein, Vitellius potior imperium, vir honoratus magis quam nobilis 6 familia; hic, cum volo sum similis Nero occido a Vespasianus dux, et, dejectus in Tiberis, careo communis sepultura.*

The Scythians have not any house, or dwelling, or habita-

*Scythae non sum ullus domus, aut tectum, aut*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

3. Verbs of ACQUITTING are, *absolvo, liberó, purgo.*

4. Verbs of ADMONISHING are, *moneo, admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio.*

*Note* 1. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONDEMNING, and ACQUITTING, instead of the genitive, take frequently the ablative, and that either with or without the preposition *de;* as, Cic. *Accusare me de epistolarum negligentia.* Id. *De repetundis eum postulavit.* Id. *De praevaricatione eum absolvere.* Id. *Eum de vi condemnavit.* Id. *Suis eum eriminibus accusabo.* Id. *Metuit ne scelere se alliget.* Liv. *Consulem suspicione absolvere.* Cic. *Librarios culpa libero.* Tac. *Adolescentem crimine purgavit.* Virg. *Damnabis tu quoque votis.* Cic. *Condemnabo te eodem crimine.* Eut. *Plurimos capite damnavit.*

*Note* 2. *Accuso, incuso, insimulo,* sometimes take two accusatives; as, Plaut. *Si id me non accusas.* Ter. *Quae me incusaveras.* Plaut. *Sic me insimulare falsum facinus.*

*Note* 3. Verbs of ADMONISHING, instead of the genitive, take sometimes the ablative with *de;* as, Cic. *Ut Terentiam moneatis de testamento.* Id. *De quo vos paulo ante admonui.* Id. *Te de indulgentia patria commonebat.* And sometimes they govern two accusatives; as, Cic. *Eos hoc moneo.* Ter. *Id unum te moneo.* Id. *Isthuc me admonere.*

*Note* 4. The genitive, strictly speaking, is notgoverned by the verbs mentioned in this rule, but by some ablative understood; such as, *crimine, scelere, peccato, culpa, poena, actione, multa, nomine, re, causa, ergo,* &c. as, *Accuso te furti;* i. e. *crimine furti.* And these, or any other ablative, is always governed by *de* or *in* expressed or understood. When verbs of admonishing take two accusatives, *circa* or *quod ad* may be understood to the accusative of the thing.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. He that accuses another of a crime, ought to look well to himself; for it is the property of a fool, to accuse another of a fault, of which he himself is guilty. | *Qui incuso alter probrum, debeo intueor sui ipse; nam sum stultus, accuso alter peccatum, qui ipse sum conscius.* |
| The soldiers were in a rage, and began to charge the tribunes with treason and treachery, and to accuse the centurions of avarice. | *Miles fremo, et coepi arguo tribunus majestas ac proditio, et insimulo centurio avaritia.* |
| The deputies have accused this man of extortion; he cannot govern his tongue, he will make himself guilty of theft or of bribery. | *Legatus postulo hic homo repetundae; ipse non possum moderor lingua, alligo sui furtum aut ambitus.* |
| 2. Forbear to charge your friend with villany, or reproach him with arrogance; he condemns himself of rashness, he condemns himself of foolishness. | *Parco damno amicus tuus scelus, aut infamo is arrogantia; condemno sui ipse temeritas, condemno sui ipse amentia.* |
| 3. The senate neither freed | *Senatus nec libero homo* |

the man of the fault, nor accused him; but after he had cleared himself of all the things that were alleged, the judges acquitted him of the trespass.

*culpa, neque arguo; sed postquam purgo sui omnis qui affero, judex absolvo is injuria.*

4. Our infirmity often reminds us of mortality, sickness warns us of death, adversity ought to admonish us of our duty, and put us in mind of religion.

*Imbecillitas noster saepe admoneo ego mortalitas, morbus moneo ego mors, res adversus debeo commonefacio ego officium noster, et commoneo ego religio.*

¶ Julius Cæsar was a very spare drinker of wine, and so easy as to his diet, that he is said once to have made use of old oil, served up instead of fresh, that he might not seem to accuse his landlord of carelessness or clownish ignorance.

*Julius Cæsar sum parcus vinum, et adeo indifferens circa victus, ut dico quondam appeto conditus oleum, appositus pro viridis, ne videor arguo hospes negligentia aut rusticitas.*

Not long after Coepio and Hispo accused Marcellus, pretor of Bithynia, of high treason. The calamities of the times and the insolence of men rendered Hispo and his way of life afterwards famous: at first he was needy and obscure, but turbulent; he made his court to the cruelty of the prince. There remained even then some traces of expiring liberty.

*Nec multo post, Coepio et Hispo postulo Marcellus, praetor Bithynia, majestas. Miseria tempus et audacia homo facio Hispo et forma vita postea celeber: primo sum egens et ignotus, at inquies; adrepo saevitia princeps. Maneo etiam tum quidam vestigium moriens libertas.*

Capito objected, that Thrasea, though invested with the priesthood, had never made oblations for the safety of the prince, and that he had not attended the funeral of Poppea. Capito was an enemy to Thrasea, because he had supported the deputies of the Cilicians, when they accused him of extortion.

*Capito objecto, Thrasea, quamvis praeditus sacerdotium, nunquam immolo pro salus princeps, et non intersum funus Poppea. Capito sum inimicus Thrasea, quod juvo legatus Cilix, dum interrogo is repetundae.*

A certain informer long ago

*Delator quidam olim*

accused this honest man of a wicked action; the judges however did not find him guilty of the villany, but absolved him from the charge. The cursed rogue was cast into prison, where he leads a life worse than death. He often blames the times for the mishap, of which he himself is the cause.

*accuso hic probus vir facinus; judex tamen non condemno is scelus, sed absolvo is crimen. Sceleratus homo conjicio in carcer, ubi vita gravis mors exigo. Saepe damno tempus infelicitas, qui ipse sum causa.*

On the other side the consul bado the Romans remember their former bravery; he put them in mind of the Aventine and Sacred mount, that they should fight for their liberty, which they had lately recovered.

*Ex alter pars, consul jubeo Romanus memini pristinus virtus; admoneo is Aventinus et Sacer mons, ut pugno pro libertas, qui nuper recupero.*

When the army of the thirty tyrants, of which the greatest part were Athenians, fled, Thrasybulus called out, and put them in mind of their relation, their laws, and their old fellowship during so many wars, and begged that they would pity their banished countrymen.

*Cum exercitus triginta tyrannus, qui pars magnus sum Atheniensis, fugio, Thrasybulus exclamo, et admoneo is cognatio, lex, et vetustus commilitium per tot bellum, et oro ut misereor exul civis.*

Alexander, in his passage, put the Thessalians in mind of the kindnesses of his father Philip, and his mother's alliance with them by the family of the Aeacidae. The Thessalians heard these things gladly, and made him captain-general of the whole nation.

*Alexander, in transitus, admoneo Thessalus beneficium pater Philippus, et maternus necessitudo cum hic ab gens Aeacidae. Thessalus audio hic cupide, et creo is dux universus gens.*

Midas requested of Bacchus, that whatever he touched might become gold; Bacchus consented. Whatever, therefore, Midas touched, instantly became gold; nay, when he touched his meat or drink, they also became gold. Midas, now sensible of his mistake, accused himself of folly, and desired Bacchus to remove this pernicious gift. Bacchus complied, and bid him bathe in the river Pactolus. Midas did so, and hence the sand of that river became gold.

Sesostris, king of Egypt, had his chariot drawn by four captive kings, whom he had not condemned to die. But as one of them continually fixed his eye upon the chariot-wheel, Sesostris asked him, what he meant? The captive king replied, The turning of the wheel puts me in mind of our fortune; for that part which is now highest, presently becomes lowest; and that which is lowest becomes highest.

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

much, and gold is valued a great deal every where.

*maximum facio, et passim plurimum fio aurum.*

Every evil is as great as we rate it; a wise man, however, values reputation more than life itself.

*Unusquisque malum sum tantum quantum ille taxo; sapiens, tamen, aestimo fama plus quam vita ipse.*

There is nobody in all this house who regards what he either says or does before the child.

*Nemo sum in hic totus domus qui pensum habeo quis coram infans aut dicc aut facio.*

War makes many bishops who in peace were not valued so much as a farthing or a pin.

*Bellum gigno multus episcopus, qui in pax ne quidem teruncius aut pilus fio.*

¶ It is not the part of a wise man to say, I will live well to-morrow. Virtue is the most precious of all things. It is therefore the part of a fool to despise that which all men ought to value more than riches or pleasure.

*Non sum sapiens dico, vivo bene cras. Virtus sum pretiosus omnis res. Sum itaque stultus sperno is qui omnis debeo aestimo plus quam divitiae aut voluptas.*

A wise man values pleasure very little, because it is the bane of the mind, and the cause of all wickedness and misery; but he values no possession more than virtue, because it is an ornament in prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the fountain of all public and private happiness.

*Sapiens facio voluptas minimum, quia sum pestis animus, et origo omnis scelus et miseria; sed aestimo nullus possessio plus quam virtus, quia sum ornamentum in res secundus, solatium in adversus, et fons omnis publicus et privatus felicitas.*

Thebes, both before Epaminondas was born, and after his death, was always subject to a foreign power; on the other hand, as long as he governed the commonwealth, it was the head of all Greece. From which it may be understood, that one man was more worth than the whole city, and that an army is just as much worth as the general is

*Thebae, et ante Epaminondas natus, et post is interitus, perpetuo pareo alienus imperium; contra is, quamdiu ille praesum respublica, sum caput totus Graecia. Ex qui possum intelligo, unus homo sum plus quam totus civitas, et exercitus sum tantum quantum imperator.*

A boar had made the fountain muddy, out of which a horse of a proud spirit used to drink. The horse, full of wrath, intreated a man, that he would assist him against the boar. The man leaped upon the back of the horse, and slew the boar. The horse was glad; nothing was more joyful than the foolish horse. The man then spake to the horse thus: I value you more than the boar which I have slain; a horse is the most useful of all quadrupeds; hitherto you have been free from labour, you shall not return to your former way of life. The horse, now sad, accused himself of great madness: Pride, said he, hath pushed me on to revenge; my foolish pride is now a grief to my heart; I wish I had forgot the small injury done by the boar; I am no more my own master.

---

33. VERBS of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the dative with the accusative.

| | |
|---|---|
| I compare Virgil to Homer. | *Comparo Virgilium Homero.* |
| Give every man his own. | *Suum cuique tribuito.* |
| You tell a story to a deaf man. | *Narras fabulam surdo.* |
| He rescued me from death. | *Eripuit me morti.* |
| Give not up your mind to pleasure. | *Ne addicas animum voluptati.* |

1. Verbs of COMPARING are, *comparo, compono, confero, aequo, aequiparo;* also, *antepono, antefero, praepono, praefero;* and *postpono, posthabeo, postfero,* &c.

2. Verbs of GIVING are, *do, tribuo, largior, praebeo, ministro, suggero, suppedito.* To which add verbs of RESTORING; as, *reddo, restituo, retribuo, rependo, remetior:* of ACQUIRING; as, *quaero, acquiro, paro, pario:* of PROMISING; as, *promitto, polliceor, recipio, spondeo;* also, *debeo, solvo, assero, vindico, mitto, relinquo,* and innumerable others.

3. Verbs of DECLARING are, *narro, dico, memoro, loquor, nuncio, refero, declaro, aperio, expono, explico, significo, indico, monstro, ostendo,* &c. To which add verbs of DENYING; as, *nego, inficior:* and CONFESSING; as, *fateor, confiteor,* &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING AWAY are, *aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, surripio, detraho, excutio, extorqueo,* &c.

5. To these may be added a great many active verbs, compounded with the prepositions *ad, in, ob, prae, sub,* and innumerable other verbs that cannot be reduced to distinct classes. In short, any active verb may govern the dative with the accusative, when together with the things done is also signified the person or thing to or for whom or which it is done.

*Note* 1. *Comparo, confero, compono*, instead of the dative, take frequently the ablative with *cum*: as, Cic. *Ut hominem cum homine comparetis.* Sall. *Dicta cum factis componere.* Cic. *Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello.*

*Note* 2. Verbs of TAKING AWAY, instead of the dative, have often the ablative, with *a, ab, de, e*, or *ex*; as, Ter. *Auferre ab aliquo triginta minas.* Cic. *Eripite nos ex miseriis.* Plaut. *De magnis divitiis si quid demas*, &c. The preposition is sometimes suppressed; as, Virg. *Vaginâ eripit ensem.*

*Note* 3. The accusative is sometimes suppressed; as, *Supplicare alicui*, sc. *genua. Nubere alicui*, sc. *se* vel *vultum. Imponere alicui*, sc. *sarcinam* vel *ridiculi quidpiam. Detrahere alicui*, sc. *laudem. Ignoscere alicui*, sc. *culpam*, &c.

*Note* 4. These verbs *hortor, invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso, instigo, incito, suscito, allicio, pellicio*, and the like, instead of the dative, take the accusative, with the preposition *ad*, or sometimes *in*.

1. The covetous man compares great things with small, and disregards every thing in comparison of money. Old men compare themselves with old men, and prefer retirement to business; but boys generally postpone serious matters to diversion.

*Avarus compono magnus parvus, et postpono omnis nummus. Senex comparo sui senex, et antefero otium negotium; at puer fere posthabeo serius ludus.*

Fools compare themselves with great men, and prefer pleasure to virtue; but wise men put themselves on a level with their inferiors, and prefer friendship to money; they less value wealth than liberty, and prefer death to slavery.

*Stultus confero sui magnus, et praepono voluptas virtus; sed sapiens aequo sui inferior, et praefero amicitia pecunia; postfero opes libertas, et antepono mors servitus.*

2. God hath given an erect countenance to man, bestowed on him many endowments of mind, and granted him the earth for a habitation, which yields grass for cattle, affords flowers for bees, finds food for man, and furnishes fuel for fire.

*Deus do sublimis os homo, tribuo is multus dos animus, et largior is terra in domicilium, qui suggero gramen pecus, ministro flos apis, suppedito alimentum homo, et praebeo materia ignis.*

If this tyrant will not restore liberty to the citizens, return things to their owners, refund the money to the people, or repay to every one his own, the people ought to seek for themselves another governor, and procure an enemy to their foe.

*Si hic tyrannus, nolo reddo libertas civis, restituo res dominus suus, retribuo pecunia populus, aut rependo quisque suus, populus debeo quaero alius praefectus sui, atque acquiro hostis inimicus suus*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ly, who denies aid to his country, or refuses a legacy to the man to whom the testator hath left it.

*gatum homo qui legator relinquo.*

4. Pain takes away the enjoyment of pleasure from men, and often removes sleep from their eyes. Wine removes the load from an anxious spirit, and takes off the gloom from the brows. But it is the property of philosophy to remove error from the mind.

*Dolor aufero fructus voluptas homo, et saepe adimo somnus oculus. Vinum eximo onus solicitus animus, et demo nubes supercilium. Sed sum proprius philosophia detraho error mens.*

Fortune often snatches away wealth from the rich, but she cannot filch away honesty or probity from the virtuous. It is not easy, however, to extort money from a covetous man; you will sooner wrest the club from Hercules. But you may easily strike fire from a flint.

*Fortuna saepe eripio opes dives, at non possum surripio honestas aut probitas bonus. Haud facilis tamen sum extorqueo pecunia avarus; cito extorqueo clava Hercules. Sed possum facile excutio ignis silex.*

5. A wise man suits himself to nature, and adds virtue to virtue; but a fool gives up his mind to intemperance, and brings misery on his country; sometimes he turns robber, and puts a sword to the throat of his countrymen; he joins wicked fellows as comrades to him, and adds strength to the mischief.

*Sapiens accommodo sui natura, et addo virtus virtus; at stultus addico animus intemperantia, et adfero calamitas patria; interdum fio latro, et admoveo gladius jugulum civis; adjungo pravus homo socius sui, et adjicio vires malum.*

A brave man easily pardons others many things, himself nothing; he proclaims war against his lusts, but never desires to make war upon his country, or engage himself in civil broils; he rather chuses to fasten his darts in the backs of enemies, to strike a terror into them, or to inflict punishment on criminals.

*Fortis vir facile ignosco alius multus, sui nihil; indico bellum cupiditas suus, sed nunquam cupio infero bellum patria, aut insero sui civilis dissensio; malo infigo telum tergum hostis, incutio terror ille, aut irrogo poena peccans*

We ought to oppose a stout

*Debeo oppono fortis pec-*

heart to hard fortune; but we ought not to throw ourselves in among the darts of the enemy, and expose our life to danger without cause, especially now when night begins to spread darkness over the earth.

*tus adversus res; sed non debeo objicio ego telum hostis, et offero caput periculum sine causa, praesertim nun cumc nox incipio offundo caligo terra.*

The bees prepare meat for the winter; and a king ought to imitate them, and provide those things that are necessary for war or a siege; he ought to set a general and lieutenants over his forces, and prescribe to every one his duty, that he may be able to prevent access to the enemy.

*Apis praeparo cibus hiems; et rex debeo imitor is, et paro is qui sum necessarius bellum aut obsidio; debeo praeficio dux et legatus copiae, et praescribo unusquisque munia suus, ut possum praecludo aditus hostis.*

The king being frighted, puts spurs to his horse, and withdraws himself from the battle; his army was routed and put to flight; the cities and towns soon after began to submit themselves to the conqueror, to put their necks under his yoke, and subject themselves to his government.

*Rex territus, subdo calcar equus, et subtraho sui pugna; exercitus is fundo fugoque; urbs et oppidum mox coepi submitto sui victor, suppono collum jugum, et subjicio sui imperium is.*

Gold and poverty have often persuaded men to bad things; but I give thanks to God, that my brother has done you no wrong; I give credit to the words of the messenger more than to yours; I will not shut my ears to the truth.

*Aurum et paupertas saepe suadeo malum homo; sed ago gratia Deus, quod frater meus facio tu nullus injuria: habeo fides verbum nuncius magis quam tuus; nolo claudo auris veritas.*

God, who has threatened most dreadful punishment to the wicked, commands us to set bounds to our desires, and give a check to lust; let us, therefore, lend a patient ear to his admonitions; let us not devote ourselves to pleasure, nor

*Deus, qui minor gravis supplicium impius, jubeo ego statuo modus cupido noster, et injicio fraenum libido; commodo, igitur, patiens auris monitum is, ne dedo ego voluptas, neque trado egomet socordia*

give up ourselves to sloth or idleness.

*aut ignavia.*

*Note* 4. The general conformed himself to the inclination of the prince, and called the rogues before him; they had provoked us to anger, had challenged us to a combat, had spirited up others to the same crime, and spurred them on to arms. The next day, however, the general invited them all to a feast, and exhorted them to peace.

*Dux conformo sui ad voluntas rex, et scelestus ad sui voco; lacesso ego ad ira, provoco ego ad certamen, animo alius ad idem crimen et stimulo is ad arma. Postridie, tamen, dux invito omnis ad epulae, et hor'or is ad pax.*

The love of praise rouses men to their duty, disposes their minds to industry, and incites them to glorious actions. But the love of money prompts men to villanous practices, allures them to wickedness, and entices maids to dishonesty.

*Amor laus suscito homo ad officium suus, inclino animus ad diligentia, et incito is ad praeclarus facinus. Sed amor nummus instigo vir in malus ars, allicio is ad nequitia, et pellicio virgo ad stuprum.*

¶ When Eumenes understood these things, he called his soldiers together, and first he gives them thanks, that none was found who preferred the hopes of a bloody reward to the obligation of his oath; then he cunningly subjoins, that he had forged these letters, that he might try their affections.

*Cum Eumenes cognosco hic, convoco miles, et primo ago is gratia, quod nemo invenio qui antepono spes cruentus praemium fides sacramentum; tum callide subnecto, sui confingo hic epistola, ut experior animus.*

After this, Alexander invites his friends to a feast; where, when mention was made of the things which Philip his father had done, he began to prefer himself before his father, and to extol the greatness of his own exploits to heaven, whilst the greater part of the guests said as he said.

*Post hic, Alexander voco amicus ad convivium; ubi, cum mentio orior res qui Philippus pater is gero, coepi praefero sui pater, et extollo magnitudo res suus coelum tenus, dum magnus pars conviva assentor.*

When the ambassadors of the Athenians came to Alcibiades,

*Cum legatus Atheniensis venio aa Alcibiades, polli-*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

he took the kingdom, and he made him to whom he gave it a debauchee, before he made him a king.

*do impudicus, antequam facio rex.*

Alexander commends the loyalty of the Persians, as well to their former kings as to himself. He puts them in mind of his kindnesses to them, how he had never treated them as a conquered people, but as the companions of his victory; and now he says, that he would trust the guard of his person, not only to the Macedonians, but to them too.

*Alexander laudo fides Persae, tum in pristinus rex, tum in sui. Admoneo is beneficium suus in is, ut nunquam habeo is quasi victus, sed veluti socius victoria; et nunc aio, sui credo custodia corpus suus, non tantum Macedo, sed is etiam.*

Almost all the east appointed divine honours and temples for Jason; which, after many years, Parmenio, a general of Alexander the Great, ordered to be pulled down, lest the name of any one should be more venerable in the east than the name of Alexander. After the death of Jason, Medius his son built the city of Medea, in honour of his mother.

*Totus fere oriens constituo divinus honor et templum Jason; qui, post multus annus, Parmenio, dux Alexander Magnus, jubeo diruo, ne nomen quisquam sum venerabilis in oriens nomen Alexander. Post mors Jason, Medius is filius condo urbs Medea, in honor mater.*

The Athenians, therefore, against so great a storm of war, chuse two generals, Pericles, a man of tried conduct, and Sophocles, the writer of tragedies; who both laid waste the lands of the Spartans, and added many cities of Achaia to the empire of the Athenians. This affair procured to the generals the love of the citizens.

*Atheniensis, igitur, adversus tantus tempestas bellum, deligo duo dux, Pericles, vir spectatus virtus, et Sophocles, scriptor tragoedia: qui et vasto ager Spartanus, et adjicio multus civitas Achaia imperium Atheniensis. Is res concilio dux amor civis.*

Wherefore, as all the pretenders were invited to the wedding, the Grecian strangers are desired likewise to the feast; then the young lady be-

*Itaque, cum omnis procus invito ad nuptiae, Graecus hospes rogo etiam ad convivium; deinde virgo introductus, jubeo a pa-*

ing introduced, was ordered by her father to deliver water to him, whom she chose for her husband. She turning to the Greeks, delivers the water to Protis, who afterwards built Massilia nigh the mouth of the river Rhone.

*ter porrigo aqua is, qui eligo vir. Ille conversus ad Graecus, porrigo aqua Protis, qui postea condo Massilia prope ostium amnis Rhodanus.*

Claudius Cæsar made war upon Britain, which none of the Romans after Julius Cæsar had meddled with; he added likewise some islands lying in the ocean beyond Britain to the Roman empire, which are called the Orkneys, and gave the name of Britannicus to his son.

*Claudius Cæsar infero bellum Britannia, qui nullus Romanus post Julius Cæsar attingo; addo etiam quidam insula positus in oceanus ultra Britannia Romanus imperium, qui appello Orcades, imponoque nomen Britannicus filius suus.*

Vespasian was a prince of the most charming goodness, as who did not easily punish those guilty of treason against him, beyond the pain of banishment; but he was too greedy of money, yet so that he took it from nobody unjustly, and bestowed it very liberally on people in want. He added two very potent nations, twenty towns, and the isle of Wight near Britain, to the Roman empire. Under him too Judea was added to the Roman empire, and Jerusalem, the most famous city of Palestine.

*Vespasianus sum princeps placidus bonitas, ut qui non facile punio reus majestas contra sui, ultra poena exilium; sed sum avidus pecunia, tamen ita ut aufero is nullus injuste, et largior is studiose indigens. Adjicio duo validus gens, viginti oppidum, et insula Vectae proximus Britannia, Romanus imperium. Sub hic quoque Judaea accedo Romanus imperium, et Hierosolyma, clarus urbs Palestina.*

Cyrus takes Sybaris, and returns to Persepolis; where he called the people together, and orders them all to be ready with hatchets, and cut down the wood which hung over the highways; which when they had readily done, he invites them all to a feast the day after.

*Cyrus assumo Sybaris, et regredior ad Persepolis; ubi convoco populus, et jubeō omnis praesto sum cum securis, et excido sylva qui immineo via; qui cum strenue facio, invitō omnis ad epulae postridie.*

Annibal's advice pleased king Antiochus; wherefore one of Annibal's companions is sent into Africa to the Carthaginians, to encourage them to the war, and tell them that Annibal would come presently with an army; that nothing was wanting but the countenance of the Carthaginians.

*Annibal consilium placeo rex Antiochus; quare unus ex comes Annibal mitto in Africa ad Carthaginiensis, ut hortor is ad bellum, et nuncio Annibal mox venio cum exercitus; nihil desum nisi animus Carthaginiensis.*

Whilst all were amazed at the cruel tyranny of Aristotimus, Hellenicus, an old man, who had no children, gathers together his friends, and exhorts them to the delivery of their country. They conspire together against the tyrant's life, and Aristotimus is taken off.

*Cum omnis stupeo ad saevus dominatio Aristotimus, Hellenicus, senex, qui nullus liberi sum, contraho amicus suus, et hortor is ad vindicta patria. Conjuro in caput tyrannus, et Aristotimus opprimo.*

It is a commendable thing for a boy to apply his mind to the study of good letters; they will be always useful to him, they will procure him the favour and love of good men, which those that are wise value more than riches and pleasure.

*Laudabilis sum puer adjungo animus ad studium bonus literae; sum semper utilis ille, concilio ille favor et amor bonus, qui qui sapio aestimo plus quam divitiae et voluptas.*

God has bestowed upon all his creatures some arms or weapons for their defence. To the birds he has given wings, to the lions strength; horns to the bulls; stings to the bees; and to man he hath given wisdom, which is a more excellent weapon, and sharper than a two-edged sword.

Do not, says Hanno, give yourselves up to an immoderate joy; Mago deceives you. It is only imaginary triumphs he promises you. If we are to believe him, Annibal has cut the Roman armies to pieces; why, therefore, does he ask more soldiers? He has twice taken and plundered the Roman camp; he is loaded with booty; why, therefore, should we send him more money and provisions? The Romans do not desire peace, and consequently are not so much humbled as he would pursuade us. Let us not exhaust ourselves merely to satisfy Annibal's pride.

When Caius, a Roman nobleman, had beaten Pyrrhus king of Epire, and driven him out of Italy, he divided some lands among his soldiers; to every man he distributed four acres, and reserved no more for himself; for none, said he, ought to be a general, who will not be content with the share of a common soldier; I would rather, quoth he, rule over rich men, than be rich myself.

There are a great many miseries to which nothing but death can give relief. Death puts an end to the sorrows of the afflicted and oppressed; it sets the prisoners at liberty; it dries up the tears of the widows and fatherless; it eases the complaints of the hungry and naked; it tames the proudest tyrants, and puts an end to all our labours.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

portune the gods for nothing more, nor do I dun my potent friend for greater things.

*hil supra, nec flagito potens amicus largus.*

2. Poverty teaches some men temperance, and makes them relinquish their former fashions; but those men act wisely, who ask life, health, and subsistence of God.

*Egestas doceo aliquis temperantia, et dedoceo is prior mos; sed hic homo ago prudenter; qui rogo Deus vita, salus, et victus.*

Minerva taught Telemachus all her arts, she taught him the laws and precepts of war.

*Minerva edoceo Telemachus omnis ars suus, erudio is lex praeceptumque bellum.*

*Note* 4. Instruct this boy in the Greek and Latin languages; he is a youth of extraordinary hopes, and of the highest virtue; instruct him in all the arts which you yourself have studied; and this I chiefly beg of you, that you season his mind with piety.

*Instituo hic puer Graecus et Latinus litera; sum adolescens eximius spes, et summus virtus; instruo ille omnis ars qui tu ipse studeo; et hic praesertim tu oro, ut animus is pietas imbuo.*

¶ The people conferred on him the sovereignty; they did not take the advice of the more elderly, nor asked them their opinion. Thus whilst they are angry at the senate's power, they deliver themselves, with their wives and children, into slavery; wherefore the tyrant seizes sixty senators, lays them in chains, and threatens them with death.

*Plebs defero is summus imperium; non consulo senior, neque rogo is sententia suus. Ita dum irascor senatus potentia, trado sui, cum conjux et liberi, in servitus; itaque tyrannus comprehendo sexaginta senator, compingo in vinculum, et minor ille mors.*

After they all with tears had begged peace of the king, he replied, if they would give him pledges, that he might know they would do the things which they had promised, and if they would satisfy his allies and neighbours for the injuries which they had done them, that he would make peace with them.

*Postquam omnis cum lacryma posco rex pax, respondeo, si do sui obses, ut intelligo is facio is qui polliceor, et si satisfacio socius et finitimus suus de injuria qui infero ipse, sui facio pax cum is.*

Vitellius, bent on the death and punishment of almost every one, cut off a great many noblemen; he scarcely spared any one of the usurers and publicans, who had ever demanded of him a debt or duty; he put to death also some of the commons, because they had cursed the blue faction.

*Vitellius, pronus ad nex atque supplicium fere quisque, occido multus nobilis vir; vix parco ullus foenerator publicanusque, qui unquam flagito sui debitum aut portorium; interimo et quidam de plebs, quod maledico venetus factio.*

After him, Marcus Antoninus held the government alone, a man of the most frank generosity, whom all men admired; he was trained up to philosophy by Apollonius, to the knowledge of the Greek tongue by Sextus, the grandson of Plutarch; Fronto the orator taught him the Latin tongue.

*Post is, Marcus Antoninus teneo respublica solus, vir promptus liberalitas, qui omnis miror; instituo ad philosophia per Apollonius; ad scientia Graecus litera per Sextus, nepos Plutarchus; Fronto orator doceo is Latinus litera.*

Pythagoras taught the matrons chastity, and complaisance to their husbands; he taught the boys modesty, and the study of letters; amidst these things he inculcated upon all frugality, as the mother of virtues; he recommended temperance, and recounted every day the mischiefs of luxury. So great was the admiration of this man, that, after his death, they made a temple of his house, and worshipped him for a god.

*Pythagoras doceo matrona pudicitia, et obsequium in vir; doceo puer modestia, et studium litera; inter hic ingero omnis frugalitas, velut genetrix virtus; laudo temperantia, et enumero quotidie vitium luxuria. Tantus sum admiratio hic vir, ut, post mors is, facio templum ex domus is, coloque is pro deus.*

Catiline taught the youth, whom he had seduced, many wicked practices; for as every one's fancy, according to their age, was fired, he furnished whores to some, bought dogs and horses for others; in short, he spared neither expense nor

*Catilina edoceo juventus, qui illicio, multus malus facinus; nam uti quisque studium, ex aetas, flagro, praebeo scortum alius, mercor canis atque equus alius; postremo, parco neque sumptus neque modes*

| | |
|---|---|
| his own modesty, provided he could make them subject and trusty to him. | *tia suus, dum facio ille obnoxius fidusque sui.* |

Solomon asked wisdom of God; and God said unto him, Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked of me long life, nor riches, nor the life of thine enemies, behold I have done according to thy word. Lo! I have given thee a wise and understanding heart, and have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, riches and honour.

Before Jove, no husbandman manured the fields, the earth of itself produced every thing. But now sturdy steers turn up the soil, harrows break the sluggish clods, and the swains pray to the gods for moist summers and serene winters.

When Hercules killed the giants Albion and Bergion, his arrows were wasted in the fight, so that he wanted arms: wherefore he begged aid of Jupiter, and obtained from him a shower of stones.

Teach thy son obedience, and he shall bless thee; teach him temperance, and he shall have health; teach him prudence, and fortune shall attend him; teach him science, and his life shall be useful; teach him religion, and his death shall be happy.

---

* 36. VERBS of filling, loading, binding, depriving, clothing, and some others, require the accusative with the ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| He filled the bowl with wine. | *Implevit pateram mero.* |
| They load the ship with gold. | *Navem onerant auro.* |
| He bound Gaul in fetters. | *Vinculis Galliam astrinxit.* |
| He deprived his father of life. | *Patrem vita privavit.* |
| He clothed the wall with pictures. | *Parietem tabulis vestiebat.* |
| He exchanges squares for rounds. | *Mutat quadrata rotundis.* |
| We present you with this pipe. | *Hac te donamus cicuta.* |
| You give me great joy. | *Afficis me magna laetitia.* |

1. Verbs of FILLING are, *impleo, compleo, expleo, repleo, saturo, obsaturo, satio, refercio, ingurgito, dito,* and the like.

2. Verbs of LOADING are, *onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, operio, obruo:* to which add Verbs of UNLOADING; such as, *levo, exonero.*

3. Verbs of BINDING are, *astringo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* to which add verbs of LOOSING; such as, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio.*

4. Verbs of DEPRIVING are, *privo, nudo, orbo:* to which add verbs of SPOILING; such as, *spolio, fraudo, emungo.*

5. Verbs of CLOTHING are, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

and provision, and sailing out of the harbour they covered the whole sea with their fleet.

*tus operio totus pelagus classis.*

But Aeolus, who controls the winds with imperial sway, had resolved, when night should cover the earth with darkness, to bury them under the waves, whilst there should be none at hand that could relieve their minds from the distress.

*At Aeolus, qui ventus imperium premo, statuo, cum nox obruo terra tenebrae, opprimo is fluctus, dum nullus adsum qui levo animus aegritudo.*

3. You will easily gain over good men by acts of kindness; but it is necessary to tie up some men by laws, to bind others with chains, that they may not obstruct the public good by their private quarrels.

*Facile devincio bonus beneficium; at necesse sum ligo quidam lex, astringo alius vinculum, ne impedio bonum publicus privatus simultas.*

The wicked endeavour to ensnare others with the allurements of vice; but they cannot disengage themselves from troubles, or extricate themselves from sorrows; for though fortune sometimes delivers them from punishment, she never frees them from fear.

*Malus conor irretio alius illecebrae vitium; at non possum laxo sui molestia, aut expedio sui aerumna; licet enim fortuna interdum libero is supplicium, nunquam solvo is metus.*

4. This new philosophy deprives us of our rest, despoils us of our judgment, bereaves us of our senses; it cheats the young men out of their diversion, cozens the old men out of their money, nay, it robs the temples of presents.

*Hic novus philosophia privo ego quies, spolio ego judicium, orbo ego sensus; fraudo adolescens oblectamentum, emungo senex argentum, imo nudo fanum donum.*

5. The ancients used to clothe their bodies with the skins of wild beasts, and to cover the temples of the gods with boughs; but men now clothe themselves with garments of silk, even when winter has covered the earth with snow

*Vetustus soleo vestio corpus spolium fera, et velo delubrum deus frons; at nunc homo induo sui sericus vestimentum, etiam cum bruma amicio terra nix.*

The Athenians used to crown

*Atheniensis soleo corona*

their conquerors with olive, or bedeck the temples of their heads with laurel, when they had forced an enemy from their camp, or saved a citizen by their arms; they used also to crown their poets with ivy or laurel; they shod their comedians with sandals, and their tragedians with buskins.

*victor olea, aut cingo tempus laurus, cum exuo hostis castra, aut tego civis arma; soleo etiam corono poeta hedera aut laurus; comoedus calceo soccus, et tragoedus cothurnus.*

6. The man who doth not pursue his enemy with curses, nor maul him with darts, but exchanges resentment for friendship, is worthy to be loved. The poets will present him with immortality, they will reward him with encomiums, they will extol him with honour, and celebrate him with praises. Others will enrich him with gifts, and entertain him at their table.

*Vir qui non insector inimicus maledictum, aut incesso is jaculum, sed muto ira amicitia, sum dignus amo. Poeta dono is aeternitas, remuneror is elogium afficio is honor, et prosequor is laus. Alius beo is munus, et communico is mensa.*

That fellow bestrews the ground with leaves, he feeds himself with herbs, and amuses himself with trifles; I will not compliment him with a salutation, I will not dignify him with such an honour.

*Iste homo spargo humus folium, pasco sui herba, et oblecto sui nugae; ego non imperitor is salus, haud dignor is talis honor.*

¶ Some men value reputation more than riches, or life itself; wherefore the tyrant, whilst he thinks himself despised, is in a rage, and resolves to fill the city with slaughter; but it was to no purpose to be angry with those who did not value him a rush.

*Quidam aestimo fama plus quam divitiae, aut vita ipse; itaque tyrannus, dum puto sui contemno, saevio, et statuo repleo civitas caedes; sed de nihilum sum irascor ille qui is non floccus facio.*

When Alcibiades returned, the Athenians loaded him not only with all human honours, but divine; they compensated his losses with presents: they

*Cum Alcibiades redeo, Atheniensis oncro is non tantum omnis humanus honor, sed divinus; expleo detrimentum munus: non*

had not the unfortunate battle of Sicily in their mouths, but the conquest of Greece; nor did they make mention of Syracuse, but of Ionia and the Hellespont.

*illè in os sum adversus pugna Sicilia, sed victoria Graecia; nec Syracusae, sed Ionia, Hellespontusque memini.*

After he had obliged the neighbouring princes with acts of kindness and complaisance, he lays a plot for his sister's son, whom he rèsolves to deprive of life and of his possessions; and he would have robbed him of his kingdom, had not a mutiny of the soldiers ensued, whom he had cheated of their pay.

*Postquam devincio finitimus rex beneficium et obsequium, soror filius insidiae instruo, qui statuo privo vita et possessio; et spolio is regnum, ni seditio miles insequor, qui stipendium fraudo.*

At Alesia, Cæsar drew two ditches fifteen feet broad, the innermost of which he filled with water conveyed from the river. This the enemy afterwards endeavoured to cover over with hurdles, and fill up with the rampart.

*Apud Alesia, Cæsar perduco duo fossa quindecim pes latus, qui interior compleo aqua ex flumen derivatus. Hic hostis postea conor intego crates, atque expleo agger.*

Varro says, that he had a lioness of marble, and winged Cupids sporting with her, some of which were holding her tied fast, others were forcing her to drink out of a horn, others were shoeing her with sandals, and that all were of one stone.

*Varro trado, sui habeo leaena marmoreus, aligerque Cupido ludens cum is, qui alius teneo is religatus, alius cogo is bibo ex cornu, alius calceo is soccus, et omnis sum ex unus lapis.*

Such was the slaughter of the scattered soldiers, that the Athenians sustained more damage in that battle, than they had caused in the former; and so great was the despair among the Athenians, that immediately they changed their general Alcibiades for Conon.

*Tantus sum caedes palans miles, ut Atheniensis accipio plus vulnus in is praelium, quam do in superior; et tantus sum desperatio apud Atheniensis, ut statim muto dux Alcibiades Conon.*

If I shall only touch upon the most considerable virtues of

*Si tantummodo summus virtus Pelopidas attingo,*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

| | |
|---|---|
| I am accused of theft. | *Accusor furti.* |
| Slaves are rated at more. | *Mancipia pluris aestimantur.* |
| Virgil is compared to Homer. | *Virgilius comparatur Homero.* |
| I am taught grammar. | *Doceor grammaticam.* |
| The bowl is filled with wine. | *Patera impletur mero.* |

1. The passives of verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, retain the genitive.

2. The passives of verbs of valuing, retain the genitives *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*, &c.

3. The passives of verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, retain the dative.

4. The passives of verbs of asking and teaching, retain the accusative of the thing.

5. The passives of verbs of filling, loading, binding, depriving, clothing, *&c.* retain the ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| He was accused of most heinous crimes, but he was cleared of all: and deservedly; for he was accused of faults, of which he was innocent. | *Accuso gravis sceius, sed absolvo omnis: et merito; nam arguo culpa, qui sum insons.* |
| Albucilla, the famous woman, was accused of disaffection toward the emperor; but she was accused of this crime by her enemies. | *Albucilla, famosus mulier, defero impietas in princeps; sed compello hic crimen ab inimicus.* |
| One was condemned for murder, another was condemned for extortion, a third was condemned for bribery and the public money. | *Alius damno caedes, alius damno repetundae, alius condemno ambitus et publicus pecunia.* |
| If any Roman knight was seen to have a horse somewhat lean, or not very sleek, he was censured for clownish carelessness. | *Si quis Romanus eques videor habeo equus gracilentus, aut parum nitidus, noto impolitia.* |
| We are admonished of many things by our friends; do not therefore take it ill that you are put in mind of your duty. | *Admoneo multus ab amicus; nolo igitur aegre fero tu officium tuus commoneo.* |

2. Silver is valued much, gold is valued more, but virtue ought to be valued most.

*Argentum aestimo magnum, aurum aestimo plus, sed virtus debeo aestimo plurimum.*

The sayings of wise men are sometimes little esteemed, but the words of a fool are always regarded less.

*Dictum sapiens interdum parvum existimo, sed verbum stultus minor semper duco.*

3. Death is rightly compared to sleep, and fortune is very rightly compared to the wind, to which it is very like.

*Mors recte comparo somnus, et fortuna recte comparo ventus, qui sum similis.*

Speech is given to all, wisdom to few; and the way to true happiness is shown to us from the word of God only.

*Sermo do cunctus, sapientia pauci; et via ad verus felicitas ostendo ego ex verbum Deus solus.*

Virtue can neither be forced away, nor stolen away from any one; but nobody can serve pleasure and virtue together.

*Virtus nec possum eripio, nec surripio quisquam; at nemo possum servio voluptas et virtus simul.*

4. The consul, when he understood these things were designed, calls the senate; and Silanus was first asked his opinion, because he was consul elect.

*Consul, ubi cognosco is paro, convoco senatus; et Silanus primus rogo sententia, quod sum consul designatus.*

Nor was the earth called upon for corn and food only, but riches are dug up; and now the iron comes out, and gold more hurtful than iron.

*Nec humus tantum posco seges alimentumque, sed opes effodio; jamque ferrum prodeo, et aurum nocens ferrum.*

This age is fertile in vice; a young lady takes pleasure to be taught the Ionic dances, and thinks on love from her tender years.

*Hic seculum sum foecundus culpa; virgo gaudeo doceo motus Ionicus, et meditor amor de tener unguis.*

5. Neither are bees satisfied with heather, nor kids with leaves, nor cruel love with tears.

*Nec cytisus saturo apis, nec frons capella, nec lacryma crudelis amor.*

The man is amused with trifles, he is surfeited with feast-

*Homo oblecto nugae, onero epulae; at fretum*

ing; but the sea is not overcharged with waters. The vallies are covered with darkness though the mountains are clothed with snow.

*non satio aqua. Vallis tenebrae tego, licet mons amicio nix.*

¶ When Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, came to the assistance of the Athenians, he made peace betwixt Thrasybulus and those who held the town. Thrasybulus also made a law, that nobody should be called to an account for things past, nor punished; and they called that an act of oblivion.

*Cum Pausanias, rex Lacedaemonius, venio auxilium Atticus, facio pax inter Thrasybulus et is qui teneo urbs. Thrasybulus quoque fero lex, ne quis accuso anteactus res, neve multo; appelloque is lex oblivio.*

He that is accused of a wicked action, or he that is called in question about any thing, is called in Latin *reus*; but he that is accused of a fault, is not consequently in the fault; nor ought he to be accounted guilty of the crime, till it be proved; for if to accuse any one of a crime were sufficient for condemnation, who could be safe?

*Qui accuso facinus, aut qui postulo de res aliquis, voco Latine* reus; *sed qui accuso culpa, non sum continuo in culpa; nec debeo existimo conscius crimen, donec probo; nam si accuso aliquis crimen sum satis ad condemnatio, quis possum sum tutus?*

Who doubts but many innocent persons have been tried for life, and condemned to death; and that a great many wicked villains have been tried for life, and absolved from the crimes of which they were guilty? But they will not escape in the world to come; God will not absolve them from the wickedness which they have committed.

*Quis dubito quin multus homo innocens accuso caput, et damno caput; et multus homo facinorosus accuso caput, et absolvo crimen qui sum conscius? Sed non effugio in seculum futurus; Deus non absolvo is scelus qui perpetro.*

Hippias ordered the murderer of his brother to be seized; who, being forced by tormetns to name those that were guilty of the murder, named all the tyrant's friends; who were

*Hippias jubeo interfector frater suus comprehendo; qui, coactus per tormentum nomino is qui sum conscius caedes, nomino omnis tyrannus amicus;*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Trajan succeeded him, descended of an ancient rather than an illustrious family; he so managed the government, that he is deservedly preferred to all the emperors. He was a man of unusual moderation and bravery; he extended far and wide the boundaries of the Roman empire, which had been defended rather, after Augustus, than nobly enlarged.

*Trajanus succedo is, natus antiquus magis quam clarus familia; ita administro respublica, ut merito praefero omnis princeps Sum vir inusitatus civilitas et fortitudo: diffundo longe lateque finis Romanus imperium, qui sum defensus magis, post Augustus, quam nobiliter ampliatus.*

When Cato was asked his opinion, he made a speech to this purpose: Do you demur, quoth he, what you should determine with respect to the most barbarous parricides? They have conspired to set their country in flames; they solicit to the war the nation of the Gauls, the most spiteful to the Roman state.

*Cum Cato rogo sententia, habeo oratio hujuscemodi: Tu cunctor, inquam ille, quis statuo de crudelis parricida? Conjuro incendo patria; arcesso ad bellum gens Gallus, infestus Romanus nomen.*

Cicero had been informed of every thing by the deputies; wherefore he unfolds the whole affair to the pretors, who immediately beset the Mulvian bridge. The Allobroges without delay surrender themselves to the pretors. All things are instantly notified to the consul by messengers; but a vast concern and joy seized him at once; for glad he was that the city was rescued from danger, but he thought the punishing of the conspirators would be a burdensome task to himself.

*Cicero edoceo cunctus per legatus; itaque aperio res omnis praetor, qui statim obsideo Mulvius pons. Allobroges sine moro dedo sui praetor. Omnis propere declaro consul per nuncius; at ingens cura atque laetitia simul occupo ille; nam laetor civitas eripio periculum, credo autem poena conjuratus forem onus sui.*

The ambassadors of the Gauls returning, set forth the enemy's wealth and negligence; they said, that their camp was filled with gold and silver; and that

*Legatus Galli reversus, ostendo hostis opes et negligentia; dico, castra repleo aurum et argentum; et is intermitto omnis militaris*

they neglected all military duty, as if they did not want the help of the sword, because they abounded in gold.

*officium, quasi non indigeo auxilium ferrum, quia abundo aurum.*

This place is encompassed on all sides with craggy rocks, that it needs no defenders; and such is the fruitfulness of the adjacent soil, that it is filled with its own riches; and such is the plenty of fountains and woods, that it abounds with water, and wants not the diversions of hunting.

*Hic locus cingo undique praeruptus rupes, ut egeo nullus defensor; et tantus sum fertilitas circumjacens solum, ut expleo proprius opes; et is sum copia fons et sylva, ut abundo aqua, nec careo voluptas venatio.*

Mars was accused of murder and incest, and obliged to undergo a trial before twelve gods as judges; but was acquitted of the crimes. The place of trial, which was near Athens, became afterwards the seat of a court, and was called Areopagus, that is, the hill of Mars. The judges were called Areopagites, who were men of the strictest integrity, and of the most blameless life.

Heaven is the lofty throne of God, but to describe the glory of it is more than human tongue can do. The grandeur and state we behold on earth cannot be compared with it. It is the abode of the just, the resting-place of the weary, and the reward of the faithful. There are rivers of pleasure and crowns of glory. Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find it; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

When Cicero was asked his opinion concerning the immortality of the soul, he replied, For many reasons I persuade myself that the soul is immortal; and if in this I err, I err with pleasure; nor will I ever be forced out of an opinion, which yields me so much delight.

In Britain, says Cæsar, there is a vast number of inhabitants; the buildings are numerous, and much like those of Gaul; the country abounds in cattle; instead of money, the Britons make use of brass or pieces of iron of a certain weight. They do not sow much corn; but live on milk and flesh, and are clothed with skins.

---

## § 2. *The government of impersonal verbs.*

### *RULE VIII.*

37. An impersonal verb governs the dative.

| | |
|---|---|
| It happened to me. | *Accidit mihi.* |
| It is profitable for the state. | *Expedit reipublicae.* |
| No man is allowed to sin. | *Licet nemini peccare.* |

The impersonal verbs belonging to this general rule, excluding those contained in the following exceptions, are such as, *accidit*, *contingit*, *evenit*, *conducit*, *expedit*, *lubet*, *libet*, *licet*, *placet*, *displicet*, *vacat*, *restat*, *praestat*, *liquet*, *nocet*, *dolet*, *sufficit*, *apparet*, &c. Together with the dative, they have frequently an infinitive after them, which supplies the place of a nominative before them.

*Note* 1. The dative is often suppressed; as, Cic. *Sexcenta licet ejusmodi proferre*, sc. *nobis*. Ter. *Faciat quod lubet*, sc. *sibi*.

*Note* 2. Impersonal verbs are sometimes used personally, especially with the pronouns *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quod*, and the like; as, Cic. *Si tibi id minus libebit*. Id. *Non idem mihi licet*. Id. *Si habes quod liqueat*. Suet. *Quae cuique libuissent*. Catul. *Marito ista non licent*.

# EXCEPTIONS.

## * 38. *Refert* and *interest* require the genitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| It concerns my father. | *Refert patris.* |
| It is the interest of all. | *Interest omnium.* |

*Note* 1. *Refert* and *interest*, beside other genitives, admit also of these, *tanti quanti*, *magni*, *permagni*, *parvi*, *pluris*; as, Cic. *Parvi refert abs te jus dici*. Id. *Magni interest mea una nos esse*.

*Note* 2. They are sometimes used personally, and admit not only of the nominatives *quid*, *quod*, *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, &c. but of others also; as, Ter. *Tua quod nihil refert*. Cic. *Illud mea magni interest*. Id. *Non quo mea interesset loci natura*. Lucr. *Magni refert studium atque voluntas*.

*Note* 3. The adverbs *tantum*, *quantum*, *multum*, *plurimum*, *infinitum*, *parum*, *nihil*, *maxime*, *minime*, and the like, are often joined with them; as, Mart. *Multum refert*. Juv. *Plurimum intercrit*, &c.

*Note* 4. The construction is elliptical, and may be thus supplied: *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se ad negotia patris*. *Interest omnium*, i. e. *est inter negotia omnium*.

## * 39. But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural.

| | |
|---|---|
| I am not concerned. | *Non mea refert.* |
| It concerns both you and me. | *Et tua et mea interest* |

*Note* 1. We may say indifferently, *cuja*, or *cujus interest*; as, Cic. *Detur ei cuja interfuit, non ei cuja nihil interfuit*. Id. *Quis enim est hodie, cujus intersit istam legem manere?*

*Note* 2. The construction may be thus supplied: *Refert mea*, i. e. *refert se ad mea negotia*. *Interest tua*, i. e. *est inter tua negotia*.

## * 40. These five, *miseret*, *poenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

| | |
|---|---|
| I pity you. | *Miseret me tui.* |
| I repent of my sin. | *Poenitet me peccati* |
| I am weary of my life. | *Taedet me vitae.* |

*Note* 1. The infinitive frequently supplies the place of the genitive; as, *Poenitet me peccasse*, for *poenitet me peccati*. *Taedet me vivere*, for *taedet me vitae*.

*Note* 2. The accusative of the person is often suppressed; as, Hor. *Scelerum si poenitet*, sc. *nos*.

*Note* 3. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, Lucr. *Ipse sui miseret*. Plaut. *Me haec conditio non poenitet*. Plaut. *Id quod pudet facilius fertur, quam id quod piget*.

*Note* 4. The genitive is governed by some substantive understood, such as, *negotium*, *factum*, *status*, *fortuna*, *respectus*, *cogitatio*, or the like; and the construction may be thus completed: *Miseret me tui*, i. e. *negotium tui mali miseret me*, or *respectus tui miseret me*. *Poenitet me peccati*, i. e. *negotium peccati*, or *cogitatio peccati poenitet me*.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

lieve rashly; and it concerns thee to know thyself.

*mere, et interest tuus nosco tu ipse.*

Cæsar used to say, that it did not so much concern him as the state; that he should be preserved.

*Cæsar soleo dico, non tam interest suus quam respublica, uti salvus sum.*

Caligula suffered the writings of Labienus to be searched for and read; since it very much concerned him that every action should be transmitted to posterity.

*Caligula permitto scriptum Labienus requiro et lectito; quando maxime interest suus ut quisque factum trado posteri.*

It concerns you, who are fathers, to take care that your children be well educated, and it concerns children to obey their parents.

*Interest vester, qui pater sum, curo ut liberi probe instituo, et refert liberi obedio parens.*

40. I look for death as the end of my miseries; but I pity you, against whom wars and battles are prepared.

*Expecto mors ut finis miseria; sed miseret ego tu, adversus qui proelium et acies paro.*

If thou art sorry for, and ashamed of thy faults, thou wilt take care not to commit any such thing hereafter.

*Si poenitet, ac pudet tu peccatum tuus, caveo ne quis talis posthac committo.*

Sulpicius, tribune of the commons, after he had acquired the greatest honour, made many destructive laws, as if he had been sorry for, and weary of his former virtues.

*Sulpicius, tribunus plebs, cum quaero magnus dignitas, fero multus perniciosus lex, quasi piget, ac taedet is pristinus virtus.*

41. It becomes all men to be free from hatred, love, wrath, and compassion, when they deliberate about doubtful matters.

*Decet omnis homo sum vacuus ab odium, amicitia, ira, atque misericordia, cum consulto de res dubius.*

There are boys that delight to lead an idle life, and there are boys who take pleasure to ply their studies.

*Sum puer qui delectat segnis traduco vita, et sum puer qui studium invigilo juvat.*

It behoves men to reckon that God sees all things, that all things are full of God.

*Oportet homo existimo Deus cerno omnis, omnis 6 Deus plenus sum.*

¶ As soon as Eumenes understood that Perdiccas was

*Ut Eumenes cognosco Perdiccas occido, sui ju*

slain, himself judged an enemy, and the management of the war committed to Antigonus, he declared those things to the soldiers, and added moreover, if those things were a terror to any, it was permitted them to depart.

*dico hostis, et summa bellum committo Antigonus, indico is miles; et addo insuper, si quis is terror sum, licet ille discedo.*

The anger of the Almighty God ought to be terrible to all men; no less to the highest and haughtiest of the lords of the earth, than the meanest of mortals. He can, if he please, disjoint all the parts of this beautiful structure of the world, and reduce them into one confused mass, like that out of which they were originally formed.

*Ira Deus Omnipotens debeo sum terribilis omnis, non minus summus et superbus dominus terra orbis, quam infimus mortalis. Possum, si placet is, divello omnis pars hic pulcher aedificium mundus, et redigo in unus moles indigestus, similis is ex qui primum formo.*

You see, says Eumenes, the dress and ornaments of your general, which not any of my enemies has put upon me, for that would be a comfort to me; you have made me of a general a prisoner. One thing I beg, that you would let me die among yourselves; for it signifies nothing to Antigonus, how or where I fall. If I obtain this, I free you from your oath.

*Cerno, inquam Eumenes, habitus atque ornamentum dux vester, qui non quisquam hostis impono ego, nam hic forem solatium ego; tu facio ego ex imperator captivus. Unus oro, ut volo ego morior inter tu; nam neque interest Antigonus, quemadmodum aut ubi cado. Si hic impetro, solvo tu jusjurandum.*

Honesty hurts nobody; but knavery, though it seems to profit a man, is very pernicious to a man's credit, which all wise men value more than money; and very often it is hurtful to a man's estate and life, which fools value more than all things else; it therefore concerns all men to beware of and avoid injustice.

*Probitas noceo nemo; sed improbitas, etsi videor prosum homo, sum perniciosus existimatio homo, qui omnis sapiens aestimo plus quam pecunia; et saepe sum perniciosus homo res et vita, qui stultus facio plus quam alius omnis; refert igitur omnis caveo et vito injustitia.*

God is angry with the wicked, and threatens them with most dreadful torments; not because he hates them, but that they may repent of their sin, and be happy for ever in heaven. Do not they, therefore, deserve the punishment of eternal death, who value eternal life and happiness at nothing?

*Deus irascor impius, et minor ille dirus supplicium; non quod odi, sed uti poenitet is peccatum, et sum felix in aeternum in coelum. Nonne, igitur, mereor poena aeternus mors, qui aestimo aeternus vita et felicitas nihilum?*

You are weary of the patrician, and we of the plebeian magistrates. What do you mean, I beseech you? You desired tribunes of the commons, we grant them; you desired the *decemvirs*, we suffered them to be made; you were weary of the *decemvirs*, we forced them to lay down their power.

*Taedet tu patricius, ego plebeius magistratus. Quis volo, obsecro tu? Concupio tribunus plebs, ego concedo; desidero decemviri, ego patior creo; taedet tu decemviri, cogo is abdico magistratus.*

Wicked men provoke God daily, but he is very merciful; therefore he pities them, and is ready to forgive them their sins, if they repent of them, and are ashamed of their folly, and be willing to obey those precepts which are prescribed to us in the gospel.

*Improbus lacesso Deus quotidie, sed sum clemens; itaque miseret is ille, et paratus sum condono is peccatum, si poenitet is ille, et pudet is stultitia, et volo obtempero lex qui condo ego in evangelium.*

King Darius' mother, who till that day had not been weary of her life, when she heard that Alexander was dead, laid violent hands upon herself; not that she preferred an enemy before a son, but because she had experienced the duty of a son in him whom she had feared as an enemy.

*Rex Darius mater, qui in is dies non taedet vita, cum audio Alexander morior, infero manus sui ipse; non quod praefero hostis filius, sed quod experior pietas filius in is qui timeo ut hostis.*

Julian was a man of great eloquence, of a quick and most tenacious memory, liberal to his friends, as became so great a prince to be; he was greedy

*Julianus sum vir ingens* 6 *facundia, promptus et tenax memoria, liberalis in amicus, ut decet tantus princeps sum; sum avidus*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

2 Verbs of DISTANCE, DIFFERENCE, and DISSENSION; as, *disto, differo, dissento, dissideo, discrepo, discordo*; as, Cic. *Vides quantum distet a veritate.*

3 Verbs of DESIRING, ENTREATING, and ENQUIRING; as, *peto, expeto posco, percontor, scitor, sciscitor, rogo, oro, obsecro, precor, postulo, flagito, contendo, exigo*, &c.; as, Cic. *A te opem petimus.*

4. Verbs of CESSATION; as, *cesso, desisto, quiesco, requiesco, tempero*; as, Liv. *A praeliis cessare.*

5. Verbs of EXPECTING; as, *expecto, spero*; as, Buchan. *Ab uno expectes quod a multis sperare nequeas.*

6. Verbs of TAKING AWAY and REMOVING; as, *aufero, rapio, surripio, furor, tollo; removeo, arceo, prohibeo, pello, repello, propulso, revoco*; also, *contineo, cohibeo, refreno*; also, *defendo, munio, tego, tueor*; also, *deficio, descisco, degenero*, &c. To these add verbs compounded with *a* or *ab*; as, *abigo, abstineo, amoveo, abduco, abrado, amitto, avello, avoco*, &c.; Ter. *Minas triginta ab illo abstuli.*

7. Verbs of DISMISSING, BANISHMENT, and DISJOINING; as, *dimitto, relego, disjungo, divello, segrego, separo*, &c.; as, Caes. *Eum ab se dimittit.*

8. Verbs of BUYING; as, *emo, mercor, foeneror, conduco*; as, V. Max. *A piscatoribus jactum emerat.*

9. Many other verbs of different significations; as, *caveo, declino, deflecto; discedo, recedo; affero, do, reddo, fero, reporto; incipio, ordior; servo, custodio, vindico, timeo, metuo, formido*, &c.; as, Cic. *Regem monuerunt, a veneno ut caveret.*

*Note* 4. Verbs of STRIVING; as, *contendo, certo, bello, pugno*: and JOINING TOGETHER; as, *jungo, conjungo, concumbo, coeo, misceo*, take the ablative with *cum*; as, Ovid. *Mecum certasse feretur.* Id. *Contendite mecum.* Cic. *Bellare cum diis.* Id. *Salutem meam cum communi salute conjungere decrevi.* Tac. *Consilia cum illo non miscuerant.*

*Note* 5. The verbs *mereor, facio, fit, erit, futurum est*, take the ablative with *de*; as, *Bene vel male de aliquo mereri.* Cic. *Indicium de fide ejus fecisti.* Ter. *Qid de me fiet?* &c.

*Note* 6. Verbs of PERCEIVING and KNOWING; as, *intelligo, sentio, cognosco, conjicio, disco, percipio, colligo, audio*, take the ablative with *e* or *ex*; as, Cic. *Ex gestu tuo intelligo quid velis.* Id. *Ex tuis literis statum rerum cognovi.* Id. *Hoc ex illo audivi*, &c.

*Note* 7. Passive IMPERSONALS are either put absolutely; as, Ter. *Quid agitur? statur.* Cic. *Ab hora tertia bibebatur, ludebatur, vomebatur.* Or they take after them the case of their PERSONALS; as, Cic. *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur.* Ovid. *Nec mihi parcatur.* Virg. *Itur in sylvam.* Liv *Pestilentia laboratum est.*

*Note* 8. These six verbs, *potest, coepit, incipit, desinit, debet*, and *solet*, when joined with impersonal verbs, become impersonal themselves; as, Quinct. *Perveniri ad summa nisi ex principiis non potest.* Just. *Pigere eum facti coepit.* Cic. *Singulis a Deo consuli et provideri solet.* Id. *Negat jucunde posse vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.*

| | |
|---|---|
| He is miserable, who neither loves any one, nor is himself beloved by any one. | *Miser sum, qui neque diligo quisquam, nec ipse diligo ab ullus.* |
| The affairs of a good man are never neglected by God. | *Res bonus vir nunquam negligo a Deus.* |
| Do not trust [to] a man by whom thou hast been once deceived. | *Ne fido homo a qui semel decipio.* |
| Carthage was destroyed by the famous captain Scipio Africanus. | *Carthago deleo a celeber dux Scipio Africanus.* |
| Learning and virtue are sought by few, pleasure by many. | *Doctrina et virtus appeto a pauci, voluptas a plurimus.* |

We are so formed by nature, that we do not seem made for sport and jest.

*Ita genero a natura, ut non videor factus ad ludus jocusque.*

¶ For these achievements Codomannus is set over Armenia; and, after the death of king Ochus, is made king by the people for his former bravery. He waged war with Alexander the Great: at last, however, he was conquered by Alexander; and being slain by his own relations, he ended his life, together with the empire of the Persians.

*Ob hic decus Codomannus praeficio Armenia; et, post mors rex Ochus, constituo rex a populus propter pristinus virtus. Gero bellum cum Alexander Magnus: postremo, tamen, vinco ab Alexander; et occisus a suus, finio vita, pariter cum imperium Persa.*

Whilst these things are doing, he is acquainted that a plot is laid for him by Alexander the son-in-law of Antipater, who has been set over Macedonia; for which reason, fearing lest, if he should be slain, some tumult should arise in Macedonia, he kept him in chains. After this he goes to the city Gordium, which is situated betwixt the greater and lesser Phrygia.

*Dum hic ago, fio certior insidiae paro sui ab Alexander gener Antipater, qui praepono Macedonia; ob qui causa, timens ne, si interficio, quis motus orior in Macedonia, habco is in vinculum. Post hic peto urbs Gordium, qui positus sum inter magnus et parvus Phrygia.*

Whilst the Gauls plunder the ships, they are cut in pieces by the rowers and a part of the army, which had fled thither with their wives and children; and so great was the slaughter of the Gauls, that the fame of this victory procured Antigonus a peace not only from the Gauls, but from all his neighbours.

*Dum Gallus diripio navis, trucido a remex et pars exercitus, qui confugio eo cum conjux et liberi; et tantus sum caedes Gallus, ut opinio hic victoria praesto Antigonus pax non tantum a Gallus, sed ab omnis finitimus.*

Queen Thessalonice, the lady of Cassander, was slain by her son Antipater, though she begged her life by his mother's breasts: the reason of which parricide was, that after the death of her husband, in the division of the kingdom betwixt the brothers, she seemed to

*Regina Thessalonice, uxor Cassander, occido a filius Antipater, cum deprecor vita per uber maternus: causa qui parricidium sum, quod post mors maritus, in divisio regnum inter frater, videor propensus Alexander.*

have been more favourable to Alexander.

*Pluto peto a Jupiter, ut Proserpina do sui in matrimonium, ab ille et mater Ceres. Jupiter nego Ceres patior filia suus vivo in tartarus; sed jubeo is rapio is, dum lego flos in mons Aetna, qui sum in Sicilia. Postea Ceres impetro a Jupiter, ut sum suicum aliquando.*

Pluto desired of Jupiter, that Proserpine might be given to him in marriage, by him and her mother Ceres. Jupiter denied that Ceres would suffer her daughter to live in hell; but he bids him steal her, whilst she gathered flowers upon mount Aetna, which is in Sicily. Afterwards Ceres obtained of Jupiter, that she should be with her sometimes.

*Perdiccas simulo peto filia Antipater in matrimonium, ut facile obtineo ab is supplementum ex Macedonia; sed Antipater praesentio dolus, et fallo spes is. Post hic bellum orior inter Antigonus et Perdiccas, in qui Perdiccas supero ab Antigonus.*

Perdiccas pretends to desire the daughter of Antipater in marriage, that he might the more easily obtain of him recruits out of Macedonia; but Antipater perceived his cunning, and balked his hopes. After this a war broke out between Antigonus and Perdiccas, in which Perdiccas was worsted by Antigonus.

The poets say, that the first woman was made by Vulcan, and that every god gave her some present, whence she was called Pandora. Pallas gave her wisdom, Apollo the art of music, Mercury the art of eloquence, and Venus gave her beauty.

Acrisius, king of the Argives, shut up his daughter Danae in a strong tower, and suffered none to enter into it; because he had heard from the oracle, that he should be killed by his grandson. Jupiter turned himself into a shower of gold, and entered into the tower through the tiles. Thus Danae was got with child by the god. When Acrisius heard that his daughter had brought forth a son, he ordered her and the child to be put into a chest, and thrown into the sea. The chest was found by a fisherman, and given by him to Pilumnus king of the Rutilians, who married Danae. When Perseus, the son of Danae, was grown up, he slew his grandfather Acrisius, and so fulfilled the oracle.

---

## § 3. *The government of the infinitive, participles, gerunds, and supines.*

### *RULE IX.*

43. ONE verb governs another in the infinitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| I desire to learn. | *Cupio discere.* |
| Thou art glad to be taught. | *Gaudes doceri.* |
| Mercury is said to have invented the harp. | *Mercurius dicitur invenisse lyram.* |

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

might seek a king whom they could govern.

There were besides a great many accomplices of this design, whom the hope of power encouraged, more than want or any necessity. Most of the youth, but especially of the nobility, favoured the designs of Catiline; they chose war rather than peace, who might have lived in peace quietly and splendidly.

*Sum praeterea complures particeps hicce consilium, qui spes dominatio hortor, magis quam inopio aut alius necessitudo. Plerique juvenis, sed praesertim nobilis, faveo inceptum Catilina; malo bellum quam pax, qui licet vivo in otium molliter et magnifice.*

The minutest plant or animal, if attentively examined, affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore that omnipotent hand which created ourselves, as well as the object we admire.

So great was the impudence of the giants, that they strove to turn Jupiter out of heaven; and when they began to fight against the gods, they heaped up mountains upon mountains, and from thence darted trees set on fire. They hurled also massy stones and solid rocks: some of which falling upon the earth again, became mountains; others fell into the sea, and became islands.

---

## *GERUNDS.*

44. The gerund in DUM of the nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

| | |
|---|---|
| I must live well. | *Vivendum est mihi recte.* |
| All must die. | *Moriendum est omnibus.* |

*Note* 1. This gerund always imports necessity or obligation, and the dative after it is the person on whom the necessity or obligation lies.

*Note* 2. The dative is often suppressed; as, *Si pereundum sit;* sc. *mihi, tibi, illi, nobis, vobis, illis,* &c.

*Note* 3. This gerund, when it comes after a verb in the same clause, passes into the accusative, and, with the infinitive *esse*, expressed or understood, governs the dative; as, Cic. *Quotidie meditere resistendum esse iracundiae.* Caes. *Quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum* [esse] *putabat.*

45. The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives.

| | |
|---|---|
| Time of reading. | *Tempus legendi.* |
| Desirous to learn. | *Cupidus discendi.* |

The substantives are such as, *amor, causa, gratia, studium, tempus, occasio, ars, facultas, otium, cupido, voluntas, consuetudo,* &c.

The adjectives are such as, *peritus, imperitus, cupidus, insuetus, certus, rudis,* and others belonging to No. 14.

*Note* 1. The infinitive is sometimes used for the gerund in DI, especially by the poets; as, *Tempus abire, occasio scribere, peritus cantare*; instead of *abeundi, scribendi, cantandi.*

*Note* 2. The governing substantive is sometimes suppressed; as, Cic. *Cum haberem in animo navigandi*, sc. *propositum.* Plaut. *Huic ducendi interea abscesserit*, sc. *voluntas.*

46. The gerund in DO of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness.

| | |
|---|---|
| Paper useful for writing. | *Charta utilis scribendo.* |
| Iron fit for beating. | *Ferrum habile tundendo.* |

These adjectives are such as, *utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, var, habilis, idoneus, accommodatus, bonus, communis,* &c

*Note* 1. The adjective is sometimes suppressed; as, Cic. *Cum solvendo civitates non essent*, sc. *pares* vel *habiles.* Plin. *Alexandrinae ficus non sunt vescendo*, sc. *idoneae* vel *utiles.*

*Note* 2. This gerund is sometimes governed by a verb; as, Plaut. *Epidicum quaerendo operam dabo.* Cic. *Cum omnes scribendo adessent.* Liv. *Is censendo finis factus est.*

47. The gerund in DUM of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*, and sometimes by *ante, circa*, or *ob.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Ready to hear. | *Promptus ad audiendum.* |
| Attentive in time of teaching. | *Attentus inter docendum.* |
| A reward for teaching. | *Merces ob docendum.* |

*Note* 1. This gerund is sometimes governed by the verb *habeo*: as, Plin. *Quum enitendum haberemus.*

*Note* 2. It frequently supplies the place of the accusative before the infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, as was already observed in note 3. on No. 44.

48. The gerund in DO, of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex*, or *in*; but if the cause or manner of a thing be signified, the preposition is generally suppressed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Punishment frightens from sinning. | *Poena a peccando absterret.* |
| Pleasure is found in learning. | *Voluptas capitur ex discendo.* |
| I am weary with walking. | *Defessus sum ambulando.* |
| A wife by obeying governs. | *Uxor parendo imperat.* |

*Note* 1. This gerund is sometimes, though rarely, governed by *pro* or *cum*; as, Plaut. *Pro vapulando abs te mercedem petam.* Quinct. *Ratio recte scribendi juncta cum loquendo est.*

*Note* 2. Gerunds are substantive nouns, and consequently subject to the same rules of construction with them.

49. Gerunds of verbs governing the accusative are elegantly turned into the gerundives, or participles in DUS, which agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case.

| | |
|---|---|
| The affair must be managed. | *Curandum est rem.* / *Curanda est res.* |
| The time of managing the affair. | *Tempus curandi rem.* / *Tempus curandae rei.* |
| Fit for managing the affair. | *Idoneus curando rem.* / *Idoneus curandae rei.* |
| To manage the affair. | *Ad curandum rem.* / *Ad curandam rem.* |
| In managing the affair. | *In curando rem.* / *In curanda re.* |

To these may be added the gerunds of *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*: as, Cic. *Ad vitam utendam.* Plin. *In fruendis voluptatibus.* Cic. *In munere fungendo.* Sall. *Urbis potiundae cupido eum invasit.*

*Note* 1. The meaning of the rule is, that the gerunds of active verbs govern the accusative, as will be more fully taught in No. 54. following; but the same sense is more usually and more elegantly expressed by the gerundive joined with the substantive, which the gerund governs. And here observe, that the gerundive, with its substantive, are always put in the case of the gerund.

*Note* 2. In the plural we likewise say, *curandae sunt res*, *idoneus curandis rebus*, *ad curandus res*, and *in curandis rebus*, rather than *curandum est res*, *idoneus curando res*, *ad curandum res*, *in curando res*; but *tempus curandarum rerum* in the genitive, on account of its harsh sound, is seldom used; *tempus curandi res* is more usual and more ornate.

*Note* 3. Though the grounds of active verbs have generally an active signification; yet sometimes they seem to be used in a passive sense; as, Just. *Athenas erudiendi gratia missus*, i. e. *ut eruditetur.* Sall. *Cum ipse ad imperandum Tisidium vocaretur*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperaretur.* Vell. *Ut cives ad censendum in Italiam revocaverint*, i. e. *ut censerentur*, &c.

---

## *SUPINES.*

* 50. The supine in UM is put after a verb of motion.

| | |
|---|---|
| He hath gone to walk. | *Abiit deambulatum.* |
| They come to see. | *Spectatum veniunt.* |

*Note* 1. This supine is sometimes put after the participle; as, Hor. *Spectatum admissi, risum teneatis amici.*

*Note* 2. The supine in UM is a substantive noun in the accusative, of the fourth declension, and governed by *ad* or *in* understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Var. *Non omnis tempestas apes ad pastum prodire longius patitur.* Lucr. *In commutatum veniunt.*

*Note* 3. This supine with the verb *ire*, constitutes the future of the infinitive

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

and skilled in carrying on a war.

*silium, et peritus belligerandum.*

He acknowledges himself to be unskilled in pleading, but not unacquainted with war.

*Fateor sui sum rudis dicendum, at non ignarus bellum.*

A great many young men take pleasure in horses and dogs, and are fond of hunting.

*Plurimus adolescens gaudeo equus et canis, et sum studiosus venandum.*

46. Bituminous and nitrous water is good to be drunk.

*Bituminatus et nitrosus aqua sum utilis bibendum.*

Nature has given the frogs legs fit for swimming.

*Natura do rana crus aptus natandum.*

This is common to studying and writing, that good health contributes a great deal to both.

*Ille sum communis ediscendum scribendumque, quod bonus valetudo confero plurimum uterque.*

47. Wisdom provides things to us for living happily.

*Sapientia comparo res ego ad beate vivendum.*

The Parthians are more disposed to act than to speak.

*Parthi sum promptus ad faciendum quam ad dicendum.*

As we walk we will talk together about the great works of God.

*Inter ambulandum confabulor de magnus opus Deus.*

Nobody ought to receive a reward for accusing.

*Nemo debeo accipio praemium ob accusandum.*

48. Lazy boys are soon discouraged from learning.

*Ignavus puer cito deterreo a discendum.*

No question is now made about living well.

*Nullus quaestio jam moveo de bene vivendum.*

Greater glory is acquired by defending than by accusing.

*Uber gloria comparo ex defendendum quam ex accusandum.*

The spirit of the Cantabrians was obstinate in rebelling.

*Animus Cantabrus sum pertinax in rebellandum.*

The dog by barking discovered the thieves.

*Canis latrandum prodo fur.*

Scipio reformed the soldiers by exercising rather than by punishing.

*Scipio corrigo miles exercendun magis quam puniendum.*

Cæsar, by giving, by relieving, and forgiving, acquired great glory.

*Cæsar, dandum, sublevándum, et ignoscendum, magnus gloria adipiscor.*

49. Friends ought to be admonished and chid, and that ought to be taken kindly which is done with a good intention.

*Amicus sum monendus et objurgandus, et is sum accipiendus amice qui benevole fio.*

Why do you hesitate? says he; or what place of trying our courage do you expect? This day shall determine concerning our disputes.

*Quid dubito? inquam; aut quis locus probandus virtus expecto? Hic dies judico de noster controversia.*

Old oil is said to be good for clearing ivory from rottenness.

*Vetus oleum dico sum utilis vindicandus ebur a caries.*

Claudius was a modest man, tenacious of what was just, and fit for managing the commonwealth.

*Claudius sum vir modestus, tenax justum, et idoneus gerendus respublica.*

The boy is fit for bearing the burden; but this place is proper for spreading the nets.

*Puer sum par ferendus onus; sed hic locus sum habilis pandendus rete.*

All the cities of Greece contributed money for equipping a fleet and raising an army.

*Omnis civitas Graecia do pecunia ad aedificandus classis, et comparandus exercitus.*

Men use care in purchasing a horse, and are negligent in chusing friends.

*Homo adhibeo cura in parandus equus, et sum negligens in diligendus amicus.*

50. This man came to Cæsar to entreat that he would pardon him.

*Hic homo venio ad Cæsar oratum ut ignosco sui.*

Maecenas went to diversion, I and Virgil went to bed.

*Maecenas eo lusum, ego Virgiliusque eo dormitum.*

51. A true friend is a thing hard to be found.

*Verus amicus sum res difficilis inventu.*

Let nothing filthy to be spoken or to be seen touch those doors within which there is a child.

*Nil foedus dictu visuve tango hic limen intra qu. puer sum.*

¶ A general must endeavour to accustom his soldiers to observe the tricks, plots, and stratagems of the enemy, and what [it] is proper to pursue, and what to avoid.

*Laborandum sum dux ut consuefacio miles cognosco dolus, insidiae, et artificium hostis, et quis convenit sequor, quisque vito.*

After a long series of ages, the bird phoenix came into Egypt, and furnished an occasion to the most learned of the natives and Greeks of making speculations on that prodigy.

*Post longus ambitus seculum, avis phoenix venio in Aegyptus praebeoque materies doctus indigena et Graecus disserendum super is miraculum.*

In that battle the general was wounded; who, when he saw his men slaughtered, demanded by a crier the bodies of the slain for burial; for this among the Greeks is a sign of the victory's being yielded up: with which confession the Thebans being content gave the signal of giving quarter.

*In is praelium dux vulnero; qui, cum video suus caedo, posco per praeco corpus interfectus ad sepultura; hic enim apud Graecus sum signum victoria traditus: qui confessio Thebanus contentus, do signum parcendum.*

Whilst each of the states of Greece are ambitious of domineering, they were all ruined; for Philip king of Macedonia plotted against their common liberty; he fomented the quarrels of the states, gave assistance to the weaker, and at last reduced all, the conquerors and conquered alike, under his power.

*Dum singulus civitas Graecia sum cupidus dominandum, omnis perco; nam Philippus rex Macedonia insidior communis libertas; ole contentio civitas, fero auxilium inferus, et tandem redigo omnis, victor et victus pariter, sub suus potestas.*

The Carthaginians attempted to renew the war, and excited the Sardinians, who by an article of the peace were obliged to be subject to the Romans, to rebel: an embassy, however, of the Carthaginians came to Rome and obtained peace.

*Carthaginiensis tento reparo bellum, et impello Sardiniensis, qui ex conditio pax debeo pareo Romanus, ad rebellandum: legatio, tamen, Carthaginiensis ad Roma venio, et pax impetro.*

How desperately the fight was maintained the event shewed; none of the enemies survived the battle. The place that every one had received in fighting, that he covered with his body. Catiline was found a great way from his men amongst the carcases of the enemies.

*Quam atrociter dimico, exitus doceo; nemo hostis supersum bellum. Qui locus quis in pugnandum capio, is corpus tego. Catilina longe a suus inter hostis cadaver reperio.*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

erning as of increasing his kingdom: wherefore he subdued the Scythians, till that time invincible, who had cut off Sopyrion, a general of Alexander the Great, and had slain Cyrus, king of the Persians with two hundred thousand.

*de augendus regnum: itaque perdomo Scythae, usque ad id tempus invictus, qui deleo Sopyrio, dux Alexander Magnus, et trucido Cyrus, rex Persa, cum ducenti mille.*

Lysander, when he found by his scouts, that the Athenians were gone ashore to plunder, and that the ships were left almost empty, did not let slip the opportunity of doing his business, and so put an end to the whole war.

*Lysander, cum per speculutor comperio, Atheniensis exeo praedatum, nuvisque relictus sum pene inanis, tempus gerendus res non dimitto, atque ita totus bellum deleo.*

Whilst these things are doing in Egypt, king Dejotarus comes to Domitius, to entreat that he would not suffer the lesser Armenia, his kingdom, to be laid waste by Pharnaces.

*Dum hic in Aegyptus gero, rex Dejotarus ad Domitius venio oratum, ne patior Armenia minor, regnum suus, vasto a Pharnaces.*

Among the ancient Romans some matron of approved and well known morals was made choice of, to whom was committed all the children of the family, in whose presence it was neither allowable to speak what appeared shameful to be said, nor to do what was indecent to be done.

*Apud vetus Romanus aliquis matrona probatus spectatusque 6 mos eligo, qui committo omnis sobules familia, coram qui neque fas sum dico qui video turpis dictu, neque facio qui sum inhonestus, factu.*

When the enemies saw Alexander alone, they flock together from all quarters: nor did he less courageously resist, and alone fight against so many thousands. It is incredible to be said, that not the multitude of the enemies, nor the vast number of weapons, nor so great a shout of those that attacked him should fright him, that he alone should slaughter and put to flight so many thousands.

*Cum hostis conspicio Alexander solus, undique concurro: nec minus constanter resisto, et unus praelior adversus tot mille. Sum incredibilis dictu, ut non multitudo hostis, non vis magnus telum, non tantus clamor lacessens terreo, ut solus caedo ac fugo tot mille.*

The last and dreadful day will soon approach, when we must all appear before our Judge. What consternation will then seize the wicked! That mighty hand, which once opened the windows of heaven, and broke up the fountains of the great deep, will then unlock all the magazines of fire, and pour a second deluge on the earth. The everlasting mountains will then melt like the snow which covers their summits, and all nature will be laid in ashes.

Ceres is the goddess of fruits; she first taught the art of ploughing and sowing. Before her time the earth lay rough and uncultivated, covered with briers and full of weeds, and the people lived on acorns.

How wonderful are the birds! A passage through the air, which has been denied to other animals, is open to them. They are capable of soaring up to the clouds: they suspend their bodies and continue motionless in an element lighter than themselves. They remount, and then precipitate themselves to the earth like a descending stone.

Virgil describes the seasons, and gives the signs of the weather proper for sowing, planting, grafting, and reaping.

When men are freed from the business and cares of life, they are generally more inclined to hear and to learn; but they mistake when they consider the knowledge of abstruse and strange things as necessary to living happily.

When Ceres was weary with travelling, and thirsty, she came to a cottage, and begged a little water of an old woman that lived there: The old woman not only gave her water, but also barley broth; which, when the goddess supped up greedily, the woman's son Stellio, a saucy boy, mocked her. Ceres being thus provoked, threw some of the broth into the boy's face, and metamorphosed him into an evet.

A good man enjoyeth the tranquillity of his own breast, and rejoiceth in the happiness and prosperity of his neighbour: he openeth not his ear unto slander: the faults and failings of men give a pain to his heart. His desire is to do good; and in removing the oppression of others, he relieveth himself.

Here is the place whither we are come to bathe; you may walk along the side of the river, I with my maid will repair to the grove, to enjoy the cool shade.

The poets tell many stories hard to be believed: They say, that when Prometheus stole fire from heaven, Jupiter was incensed, and sent Pandora to Prometheus with a sealed box; but Prometheus would not receive it. Jupiter sent her again with the same box to the wife of Epimetheus, the brother of Prometheus: and she being curious, as is natural to her sex, opened it; whereupon all sorts of diseases and evils with which it was filled, flew out amongst mankind, and have infested them ever since.

## *RULE X.*

52. PARTICIPLES, gerunds, and supines, govern the case of their own verbs.

| | |
|---|---|
| Loving virtue. | *Amans virtutem.* |
| Wanting guile. | *Carens fraude.* |
| Having got riches. | *Nactus divitias.* |
| Having forgot your own affairs. | *Oblitus rerum tuarum.* |
| About to write a letter. | *Scripturus literas.* |
| Going to accuse him of theft. | *Accusaturus eum furti.* |
| Fond of reading books. | *Cupidus legendi libros.* |
| We must improve time. | *Utendum est aetate.* |
| They came to complain of injuries. | *Venerunt questum injurias.* |
| I shall go to serve the Grecian dames. | *Graiis servitum matribus ibo.* |

*Note* 1. The participle in DUS governs the dative by No. 17. And the supine in U has no case after it.

*Note* 2. Participles, gerunds, and supines, partake both of the nature of a noun and of a verb; and, accordingly, admit of a two-fold construction. In the first respect, participles are construed as other adjectives, and the gerunds and supines, like other substantive nouns; but as they partake of the nature of a verb, they govern the case of the verbs from whence they come.

*Note* 3. VERBAL nouns, as well substantives as adjectives, sometimes govern the case of their verbs; as, Cic. *Justitia est ootemperatio scriptis legibus.* Sall. *Insidiae consuli non procedebant.* Ovid. *Ignis aquae pugnax.* Just. *Gratulabundus patriae.* Gell. *Populabundus agros.* Liv. *Vitabundus castra hostium.*

*Note* 4. *Exosus, perosus,* always, and *pertaesus,* often, govern the accusative, as, Ovid. *Taedas exosa jugates.* Liv. *Plebe consulum nomen perosa.* Suet. *Pertaesus ignaviam suam.* But *pertaesus* sometimes takes the genitive; as, Tac. *Lentitudinis eorum pertaesa.*

*Note* 5. The gerund in DI, in imitation of substantive nouns, instead of the accusative, sometimes governs the genitive plural; as, Plaut. *Nominandi istorum erit copia.* Cic. *Facultas agrorum condonandi.*

*Note* 6. The verbs *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo,* with a participle perfect in the accusative, are often used by way of circumlocution, instead of the verb of the participle; as, Ter. *Effectum dabo,* i. e. *efficiam.* Id. *Inventas reddam,* i. e *eas inveniam.* Id. *Vos oratos volo,* i. e. *vos oro.* Id. *Me missum face,* i. e. *me mitte*

*Note* 7. The verbs *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, accipio, mitto, relinquo,* and some others, instead of the infinitive or substantive are elegantly construed with the participle in DUS, joined with a substantive; as, Cic. *Funus et amplum faciendum curavi;* instead of *fieri,* or *ut fieret.* Id. *Demus nos philosophiae excolendos,* &c.

| | |
|---|---|
| The Asiatics, remembering the dignity of Berenice's father, and pitying her hard fortune, sent aid. | *Asiatici, recordans* 4 *dignitas pater Berenice, et misertus is indignus fortuna, mitto auxilium.* |
| Perseus, forgetting his father's fortune, bid his soldiers remember the old glory of Alexander. | *Perseus, oblitus pater fortuna, jubeo suus miles reminiscor vetus gloria Alexander.* |
| Julius Silanus, being asked his opinion concerning those that were detained in prison, voted that punishment ought to be inflicted. | *Julius Silanus, rogatus sententia de hic qui in custodia teneo, decerno supplicium sum sumendus.* |
| Pausanias too, the other general of the Lacedemonians, being accused of treachery, went into banishment. | *Pausanias quoque, alter dux Lacedaemonius, accusatus proditio, abeo in exilium.* |
| Good magistrates, promoting the public interest, observing the laws, and favouring virtue, are worthy of honour. | *Bonus magistratus, serviens communis utilitas, parens lex, et favens virtus, sum dignus honor.* |
| Alexander, king of Egypt, dreading the cruelty of his mother, and preferring a secure and a safe life before a kingdom, left her. | *Alexander, rex Aegyptus, timens crudelitas mater, et anteponens securus et tutus vita regnum, relinquo is.* |
| Darius went about encouraging his men, and putting them | *Darius circumeo hortans suus, et admonens is* |

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

count what Annibal has done against us and our armies, by plundering our cities, and killing our fellow-soldiers.

*qui Annibal patro in ego exercitusque noster, populandum urbs, et interficiendum commilito.*

The Bituriges sent deputies to Cæsar to complain of injuries, and to beg assistance against the Carnutes.

*Bituriges mitto legatus ad Cæsar questum de injuria, et petitum auxilium contra Carnutes.*

Timoleon took Mamercus, the Italian general, a warlike man, and of great power, who had come into Sicily to assist the tyrants.

*Timoleon capio Mamercus, Italicus dux, homo bellicosus et potens, qui venio in Sicilia adjutum tyrannus.*

¶ All the soldiers of Alexander, forgetting their wives and children, looked upon the Persian gold and the riches of all the East, as their plunder; nor did they talk of wars and dangers, but the riches which they hoped to obtain.

*Omnis miles Alexander, oblitus conjux et liberi, duco Persicus aurum, et opes totus Oriens, ut suus praeda; nec memini bellum et periculum, sed divitiae qui spero obtinco.*

Lysimachus being wont to hear Callisthenes, and receive precepts of virtue from him, pitying so great a man suffering the punishment, not of any crime, but his freedom, gave him poison for a remedy of his misery; which Alexander took so ill, that he ordered him to be delivered to a very fierce lion.

*Lysimachus solitus audio Callisthenes, et accipio praeceptum virtus ab is, misertus tantus vir pendens poena, non culpa, sed libertas, do is venenum in remedium calamitas; qui Alexander fero tam aegre, ut jubeo is trado ferox leo.*

The conditions of peace offered to Antiochus, king of Asia, were these: That Asia should be the Romans'; that he should have the kingdom of Syria; that he should deliver up all his ships, prisoners, and deserters, and restore the Romans the whole charge of the war.

*Conditio pax oblatus Antiochus, rex Asia, sum hic: Ut Asia sum Romanus; ut ille habeo regnum Syria; ut trado universus navis, captivus, et transfuga, et restituo totus sumptus bellum Romanus.*

God, though angry with sin, invites sinners to repentance:

*Deus, licet iratus peccatum, invito peccator ad*

he offers them eternal happiness in heaven; but they despise his mercy, and hearken to the devil, who endeavours to tempt them to wickedness. They repent of their sins when it is too late, and their repentance cannot profit them; that is, when they suffer the punishment due to their folly.

*poenitentia: offero ille aeternus felicitas in coelum; sed contemno is misericordia, et pareo diabolus, qui conor pellicio is ad scelus. Poenitet is peccatum quando sum sero, et poenitentia suus non possum prosum is, is sum, cum do poena debitus stultitia suus.*

Antoninus was a man of an illustrious family, but not very ancient, and who deservedly may be compared with Numa; he was cruel to nobody, kind to all, seeking out the most just men to manage the government, giving honour to the good, detesting the wicked, no less venerable than terrible to kings; he was called pious, on account of his clemency.

*Antoninus sum vir clarus* 6 *genus, sed non admodum vetus, et qui merito confero Numa; sum acerbus nullus, benignus cunctus, quaerens justus ad administrandus respublica, habens honor bonus, detestans improbus, non minus venerabilis quam terribilis rex; pius propter clementia dico.*

It was a thing worth the sight, to see Xerxes lurking in a small vessel, whom a little before the whole sea hardly contained; wanting likewise the attendance of servants, whose armies, by reason of their number, were burdensome to the earth.

*Sum res dignus spectaculum, video Xerxes latens in exiguus navigium, qui paulo ante vix omnis aequor capio; carens etiam ministerium servus, qui exercitus, propter multitudo, sum gravis terra.*

Epaminondas was modest, prudent, steady, wisely using the times. skilled in war, of a great spirit, a lover of truth, merciful, not only bearing with the injuries of the people, but his friends too; he was exercised very much in running and wrestling, and employed a great deal of his application in arms.

*Epaminondas sum modestus, prudens, gravis, sapienter utens tempus, peritus bellum, magnus* 6 *animus, diligens veritas, clemens, non solum ferens injuria populus, sed etiam amicus; exerceo plurimum currendum et luctandum, et consumo plurimum studium in arma.*

Philip sends deputies to Atheas, king of the Scythians,

*Philippus mitto legatus ad Atheas, rex Scythae,*

desiring a part of the expense of the siege. Atheas, blaming the rigour of the climate, and the barrenness of the land, which did not enrich the Scythians with wealth, replied, That he had no riches wherewith he might satisfy so great a king, and that he thought it more scandalous to do but a little, than to refuse the whole.

*petens portio impensa obsidio. Atheas, causatus inclementia coelum, et sterilitas terra, qui non dito Scythae patrimonium, respondeo, Nullus sui opes sum, qui expleo tantus rex, et puto turpis defungor parvus, quam abnuo totus.*

Alexander, fond of high titles, ordered himself to be adored. The most violent among the recusants was Callisthenes, which thing brought ruin on him, and on many of the great men of Macedonia; for they were all put to death, under pretence of a plot. Nevertheless, the custom of saluting their king was retained by the Macedonians.

*Alexander, gaudens magnus titulus, jubeo sui adoro. Acer inter recusans sum Callisthenes, qui sum exitium ille, et multus princeps Macedonia; nam omnis interficio, sub species insidiae. Tamen, mos salutandum rex retineo a Macedones.*

Many cities of Greece came to complain of the injuries of Philip, king of Macedonia; but such a dispute arose in the senate betwixt Demetrius, Philip's son, whom his father had sent to satisfy the senate, and the deputies of the cities, that, to soothe their minds, and to compose the differences, there was need of threats.

*Multus civitas Graecia venio questum de injuria Philippus, rex Macedonia; sed tantus disceptatio orior in senatus inter Demetrius, Philippus filius, qui pater mitto ad satisfaciendum senatus, et legatus civitas, ut, ad mitigandus animus, et ad componendus lis, opus sum minae.*

They do not believe there are any gods, and he thinks they are to be saved, to avoid the odium of gods and men. But I think the gods have reduced the Carthaginians to this condition, that they may suffer the punishment of their impiety; who, by breaking the treaties made with us in Sicily, Spain, Italy, and Africa, have

*Non credo sum deus, et ille censeo is sum servandus, ad vitandus invidia deus homoque. At ego puto deus redigo Poeni in hic status, ut luo poena impietas; qui, violandum foedus ictus egocum in Sicilia, Hispania, Italia, et Africa, infero ego gravis calamitas.*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*Note* 1. The CAUSE is known by the question *CUR* or *QUARE? Why? Wherefore?* the MANNER, by the question *QUOMODO? How?* and the INSTRUMENT, by the question *QUOCUM? Wherewith?*

*Note* 2. The *cause* sometimes takes the prepositions *per, propter,* or *de, e, ex, prae*; as, Cic. *Legibus propter metum paret.* Id. *Cum è via, languerem.* Id. *Nec loqui prae moerore potuit.*

*Note* 3. The *manner* frequently admits the preposition *cum,* and sometimes *de, e, ex,* or *per*; as, Cic. *Semper magno cum metu dicere incipio.* Virg. *Solitio matrum de more locuta est.* Cic. *Quod adeptus est per scelus, id per luxuriam effundit.*

*Note* 4. The *instrument* seldom or never admits the preposition *cum,* but it is expressed sometimes with *a* or *ab* by the poets; as, Ovid. *Hi jaculo pisces, illi capiuntur ab hamo.* But here observe, that *cum* is generally expressed with the *ablative of concomitancy,* which signifies something to be in company with another thing; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio,* He entered with a sword, *i. e.* having a sword with him, or about him. In like manner, Cic. *Desinant obsidere cum gladiis curiam.* Id. *Ut Vettius in foro cum pugione comprehenderetur.*

*Note* 5. To the *cause* may be referred the *matter* of which any thing is made; as, Liv. *Capitolium saxo quadrato substructum.* Virg. *Aere cavo clypeus.* But the preposition is more frequently expressed; as, Cic. *Pocula ex auro.* Virg. *Templum de marmore.* Caes. *Naves factae ex robore.* Cic. *Candelabrum factum e gemmis.*

*Note* 6. To the *manner* may be referred *the means by which*; as, Cic. *Amicos observantia, rem parsimonia retinuit.* Sall. *Huic quia bonae artes desunt, dolis atque fallaciis contendit:* and *the respect wherein*; as, Cic. *Floruit cum acumine ingenii, tum admirabili quódam lepore dicendi.* Id. *Scipio omnes sale facetiisque superabat.* Caes. *Fama nobiles potentesque bello.* These also sometimes have the preposition expressed.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Cæsar was esteemed great for his favours and generosity, Cato for the integrity of his life. | *Cæsar habeo magnus beneficium ac munificentia, Cato integritas vita.* |
| Clay hardens and wax softens by one and the same fire. | *Limus duresco et cera liquesco unus idemque ignis.* |
| Wrong nobody for thy own interest's sake; men were born for the sake of men. | *Nemo violo tuus commodum gratia; homo homo causa genero.* |
| 2. Pausanias feasted after the manner of the Persians, more luxuriously than they that were with him could endure. | *Pausanias epulor, mos Persae, luxuriose quam qui adsum possum perpetior.* |
| Xerxes was conquered more by the contrivance of Themistocles, than the arms of Greece. | *Xerxes vinco magis consilium Themistocles, quam arma Graecia.* |
| Syria was desolated by an earthquake, wherein a hundred and seventy thousand men and many cities perished. | *Syria vasto terra motus, qui centum septuaginta mille homo et multus urbs pereo.* |
| Mithridates was a man very brisk in war, extraordinary for courage, a general for conduct, | *Mithridates sum vir acer bellum, eximius virtus, dux consilium, miles* |

a soldier in action, a Hannibal for spite against the Romans.

*manus, Hannibal odium in Romanus.*

3. Alexander stabbed his most dear friend Clitus with a sword.

*Alexander transfodio carus suus amicus Clitus gladius.*

They cut down the wood, which hung over the way, with hatchets.

*Excido sylva, qui immineo via, securis.*

Nero fished with golden nets which he drew with cords of purple silk.

*Nero piscor aureus rete, qui extraho blatteus funis.*

The Metapontini shew, in the temple of Minerva, the iron tools with which Epeus made the Trojan horse.

*Metapontini ostento, in templum Minerva, ferramentum qui Epeus fabrico Trojanus equus.*

Antonius fills the houses nigh the walls with the bravest of the soldiers, who forced away the defenders with trees, cudgels, tiles, and torches.

*Antonius compleo tectum propinquus murus fortis miles, qui deturbo propugnator trabs, fustis, tegula, et fax.*

Fulvius surrounded the lurking places of the enemy with fire; Posthumius so disarmed them that he scarce left them iron wherewith the ground might be tilled.

*Fulvius sepio latebra hostis ignis; Posthumius ita exarmo, ut vix relinquo ferrum qui terra colo.*

¶ The contest was dubious till his army broke into the town. In that battle, being wounded under the breast, he began to faint through loss of blood; yet he fought upon his knees, till he killed him by whom he had been wounded. The dressing of the wound was more painful than the wound itself.

*Certamen sum anceps donec exercitus irrumpo in oppidum. In is praelium, trajectus sub mamma, coepi deficio fluxus sanguis; tamen praelior genu, donec occido is a qui vulnero. Curatio vulnus sum gravis ipse vulnus.*

The Lacedaemonians, as they observed the excellent conduct of Alcibiades in all things, were afraid, lest, tempted by the love of his country, he should revolt from them, and return to a good under-

*Lacedaemonii, quum cognosco praestans prudentia Alcibiades in omnis res, perimesco, ne, ductus amor patria, desciscu ab ipse, et redeo in gratia cum suus; itaque in*

standing with his countrymen; wherefore they resolved to seek an opportunity of cutting him off.

*stituo quaero tempus interficiendus is.*

The shepherd, wearied by his wife's entreaties, returned into the wood, and found a bitch by the infant, giving her dugs to the little one, and defending it from the wild beasts and birds; and being moved with pity, with which he saw the bitch moved, he carried it to his cottage, whilst the same bitch followed.

*Pastor, fatigatus precis uxor, revertor in sylva, et invenio canis foemina juxta infans, praebens uber parvulus, et defendens a fera alesque; et motus misericordia, qui video canis motus, defero ad stabulum, dum idem canis prosequor.*

After this Alexander goes for India, that he might bound his empire with the ocean; to which glory, that the ornaments of his army might agree, he covers the horses' trappings and his soldiers' arms with silver, and called his army from their silver shields, Argyraspides.

*Post hic Alexander ad India pergo, ut finio imperium oceanus; qui gloria ut ornamentum exercitus convenio, induco equus phalerae et miles arma argentum, et voco exercitus suus, ab argenteus clypeus, Argyraspides.*

When Alexander was come to the Cuphites, where the enemy waited his coming with two hundred thousand horse, the whole army being wearied, no less with the number of their victories, than the fatigue of the war, entreats him with tears, that he would make an end of the war, remember his country, and regard the years of his soldiers.

*Cum Alexander venio ad Cuphites, ubi hostis opperior is adventus cum ducenti mille eques, omnis exercitus fessus, non minus numerus victoria, quam labor bellum, deprecor is lacryma, ut facio finis bellum, memini patria, et respicio annus miles.*

Annibal got Marcellus' ring, together with his body. Crispinus fearing some trick would be played with it by the Carthaginian, sent messengers about the neighbouring cities, that his colleague was slain,

*Annibal potior annulus Marcellus, simul cum corpus. Crispinus metuens ne quid dolus necto a Poenus, mitto nuncius circa proximus civitas, collega occido, et hostis potior an-*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

alive, he was racked with so much pain, that he called for his sword to kill himself with.

*crucio tantus dolor, ut posco ferrum qui sui interficio.*

Whilst the rest flattered Alexander, one of the old men, Clitus by name, in confidence of the king's friendship, of which he held the first place, defended the memory of Philip, and commended his exploits; but he so displeased the king, that he slew him in the entertainment with a spear, which he took from a lifeguard-man.

*Dum caeter adulor Alexander, unus ex senex, Clitus nomen, fiducia rex amicitia, qui primus locus teneo, tueor, memoria Philippus, et laudo is res gestus; sed adeo displiceo rex, ut trucido is in convivium telum, qui aufero satelles.*

Gallaecia is very fruitful in brass and lead, and very rich in gold too, so that often with the plough they tear up golden sods. On the confines of this nation there is a sacred mountain, which it is reckoned a heinous crime to open with an iron tool; but if at any time the earth is rent with lightning, it is allowed to pick up the gold thus uncovered as a present from the god.

*Gallaecia sum uber aes ac plumbum, dives quoque 6 aurum, adeo ut frequenter aratrum exscindo aureus gleba. In finis hic gens sum sacer mons, qui habeo nefas violo ferrum; sed si quando terra proscindo fulgur, permitto colligo aurum sic detectus velut deus munus.*

The glory of Cynaegirus too, an Athenian soldier, is celebrated by mighty commendations of historians, who, after innumerable slaughters, when he had driven the flying enemy to their ships, seized a loaded ship with his right hand, nor did he let go till he lost his hand; then too he took hold of the ship with his left; which when he had likewise lost, he seized the ship with his teeth.

*Gloria Cynaegirus quoque, Atheniensis miles, celebro magnus laus scriptor, qui, post innumerus caedes, cum ago fugiens hostis ad navis, teneo onustus navis dexter manus, nec dimitto priusquam amitto manus; tum quoque comprehendo navis sinister; qui cum etiam amitto, detineo navis morsus.*

Chabrias being surrounded by a concourse of the enemy, fought very bravely; but his ship being struck with a ros-

*Chabrias circumfusus concursus hostis, fortiter pugno; sed navis percussus rostrum, coepi sido.*

trum, began to sink. Though he might have escaped by swimming, if he would have thrown himself into the sea, because the fleet of the Athenians was at hand, he chose rather to perish than to quit the ship in which he had sailed: wherefore he was slain by the enemies' weapons fighting hand to hand.

*Cum possum refugio nandum, si dejicio sui in mare, quod classis Atheniensis subsum, malo pereo quam relinquo navis in qui veho: itaque interficio hostis telum cominus pugnans.*

When Helena, the mother of Constantine the Great, came to visit Judaea, she found Jerusalem, and the country about, in a forlorn ruinous condition; but being animated with a noble zeal of adorning the theatre of the world's redemption, she caused, with a great deal of cost and labour, the places where our Saviour had suffered, to be cleared of rubbish, and a magnificent church to be built, which should inclose as many of the scenes of his sufferings as possible; which stately edifice is still standing, and is kept in good repair by the generous offerings of a constant concourse of pilgrims, who annually resort to it. The walls of it are of stone, the roof of cedar. The east end incloses Mount Calvary, and the west the holy sepulchre.

To God, who is supreme, most wise and beneficent, and to him alone, belong worship, adoration, thanksgiving, and praise; who hath stretched forth the heavens with his hand, who setteth bounds to the ocean that it cannot pass, and saith unto the stormy winds, Be still; who shaketh the earth, and the nations tremble; who darteth his lightning, and the wicked are dismayed; who calleth forth worlds by the word of his mouth; who smiteth with his arm, and they sink into nothing.

---

## 2. PLACE.

### *RULE XII.*

* 54. THE name of a town of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive, when the question is made by *UBI? Where?*

| | |
|---|---|
| He lived at Rome. | *Vixit Romae.* |
| He died at London. | *Mortuus est Londini.* |

*Note* 1. When the name of a town is put in the genitive, *in urbe* or *in oppido* is understood; and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Romae urbis celebris*, but *Romae celebri urbe*, or *in Romae celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*.

*Note* 2. *Humi*, *militiae*, and *belli*, are also construed in the genitive, when the question is made by *ubi?* as, Ovid. *Procumbit humi*, sup. *in terra* vel *solo*. Id. *Prosternite humi juvenem*, sc. *ad terram*. Cic. *Cujus laudem domi defenderis*, sc. *in aedibus*. Ter. *Domi militiaeque una fuimus*. And Sall. *Belli domique agitabatur*, sc. *in loco*.

*Note* 3. The names of towns belonging to this rule, are sometimes, though rarely, expressed in the ablative; as, Vitruv. *Hujus exemplar Roma nullum habemus*, for *Romae*. Just. *Rex Tyro decedit*, for *Tyri*.

* 55. The name of a town of the third declension, or of the plural number, is expressed in the ablative, when the question is made by *UBI?*

| | |
|---|---|
| He dwells at Carthage | *Habitat Carthagine.* |
| He studied at Athens. | *Studuit Athenis.* |
| The oracles are silent at Delphi. | *Deldhis oracula cessant.* |

*Note.* Some names of towns of the third declension seem to be put in the dative, as, Plaut. *In Graecia et Carthagini.* Cic. *Convento Antonio Tiburi.* Nep. *Nulla Lacedaemonia tam est nobilis vidua,* &c. But these are old ablatives, instead of *Carthagine, Tibure, Lacedaemone.* To which add *ruri* for *rure.*

* 56. When the question is made by *Quo ?* [*Whither ?*] the name of a town is governed in the accusative.

| | |
|---|---|
| I will send a letter to Syracuse. | *Epistolam Syracusas mittam.* |
| He went to Corinth. | *Profectus est Corinthum.* |
| He returned to Babylon. | *Rediit Babylonem.* |

*Note.* We sometimes, though rarely, find the names of towns in the dative, instead of the accusative; as, Hor. *Carthagini nuncios mittam superbos.*

* 57. If the question is made by *UNDE ?* [*Whence ?*] or *QUA ?* [*By* or *Through what place ?*] the name of a town is put in the ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| He departed from Athens. | *Discessit Athenis* |
| He came from Corinth. | *Venit Corintho.* |
| I was passing through Laodicea. | *Iter Laodicea faciebam.* |

*Note* 1. When the question is made by *QUA?* the preposition *per*, to prevent ambiguity, is generally added; as. Nep. *Cum iter per Thebas faceret.*

*Note* 2. These rules concerning names of towns may be thus expressed: The name of a town after IN or AT is put in the genitive; unless it be of the third declension, or of the plural number. and then it is expressed in the ablative. The name of a town after TO or UNTO is put in the accusative; after FROM or THROUGH, in the ablative.

* 58. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns.

| | |
|---|---|
| He stays at home. | *Manet domi.* |
| He returns home. | *Domum revertitur.* |
| I am called from home. | *Domo accersitus sum.* |
| He lives in the country. | *Vivit rure* vel *ruri.* |
| He hath gone to the country. | *Abiit rus.* |
| He returns from the country. | *Redit rure.* |

*Note* 1. The preposition is frequently expressed with *domus* and *rus*; as, Ter. *In domo.* Sall. *In domum Bruti perducit.* Ascon. in Cic. *Ex rure in urbem revertebatur.*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*Note* 1. One of the substantives expressing the distance, is sometimes expressed, as, Cic. *Castra aberant bidui*, sc. *spatium, iter, viam;* or *spatio, itinere, via.*

*Note* 2. When the place where a thing is done is signified, the word denoting the distance is either expressed in the ablative; as, Caes. *Millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit:* Or in the accusative with *ad;* as, Cic. *Ad tertium milliarium consedit.* Nep. *Sepultus est ad quintum lapidem.*

*Note* 3. The EXCESS of measure or distance is always put in the ablative; as, *Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Britanniae longitudo ejus latitudinem quadraginta milliaribus superat.*

*Note* 4. The word of *distance* is governed in the accusative by *ad* or *per* understood, and in the ablative by *a* or *ab.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 54. My brother was born at London, studied at Geneva, and died at Marseilles. | *Meus frater nascor Londinum, studeo Geneva, et morior Massilia.* |
| 55. Old age was no where more honoured than at Lacedemon, and servants were no where better treated than at Athens. | *Senectus nusquam sum honoratus quam Lacedaemon, et servus nusquam bene habeo quam Athenae.* |
| Pyrrhus was slain at Delphi, and Philip was slain at Agae, as he was going to see the public games. | *Pyrrhus occido Delphi, et Philippus interficio Agae, cum eo spectatum ludus publicus.* |
| 56. He led his army to Corinth, and immediately after to Megara; and from thence to Athens. | *Duco exercitus Corinthus, ac protinus Megara, et inde Athenae.* |
| Annibal sent three bushels of gold rings to Carthage, which he had taken from the hands of the Romans slain at Cannae. | *Annibal mitto tres modius aureus annulus Carthago, qui detraho e manus Romanus occisus Cannae.* |
| 57. Cæsar setting out from Rome, came to Geneva; and Quintius going from Corinth, came to Philippi. | *Cæsar profectus Roma, venio Geneva; et Quintius profectus Corinthus, venio Philippi.* |
| Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens, and at the same time brought back Philistus the historian to Syracuse. | *Dionysius arcesso Plato Athenae, simulque reduco Philistus historicus Syracusae.* |
| 58. I use to be frequently in the country, but I was at home yesterday, and I will go home again to-morrow. | *Soleo sum rus crebro, sed sum domus heri, et revertor domus cras.* |
| All whom disgrace or villany | *Omnis qui flagitium aut* |

had chased from home, had flocked to Rome, as to a common sewer.

*facinus expello domus, Roma, sicut in sentina, confluo.*

The old fellow just now came out of the country, I will drive him into the country again.

*Senex modo redeo rus, rus abigo is denuo.*

59. Hannibal sent one army into Africa, left another in Spain, and carried a third along with him into Italy.

*Hannibal mitto unus exercitus in Africa, relinquo alter in Hispania, et duco tertius suicum in Italia.*

Cæsar gave up the kingdom of Egypt to Cleopatra, and from Alexandria he passed over to Syria, and from thence to Pontus.

*Cæsar regnum Aegyptus Cleopatra permitto, et ab Alexandria transeo in Syria, et inde in Pontus.*

Cato returning from Africa, brought the poet Ennius from Sardinia to Rome, whom we value very much.

*Cato rediens ex Africa, deduco poeta Ennius ex Sardinia Roma, qui plurimum aestimo.*

Then Pyrrhus came into Campania, and encamped at the river Allia; but, being soon forced to retire from Italy, he went into Sicily.

*Tum Pyrrhus venio in Campania, et consideo ad flumen Allia; sed, mox coactus recedo ex Italia, proficiscor in Sicilia.*

The Athenians taking this thing ill, removed the money, that had been contributed by all Greece for the expense of the Persian war, from Delos to Athens.

*Athenaensis graviter hic res ferens, transfero pecunia, qui confero ab universus Graecia in stipendium Persicus bellum, a Delos Athenae.*

60. The Persian gulf is distant a hundred and fifteen miles from the Red Sea.

*Sinus Persicus disto centum et quindecim mille passus a Mare Ruber.*

Cæsar was patient of fatigue beyond relief; he made very long journies with incredible expedition, a hundred miles generally every day.

*Cæsar sum patiens labor ultra fides; conficio longus via incredibilis celeritas, centeni mille passus fere in singulus dies.*

He pitched his camp six miles from the enemy, and he was at that time three days journey from Tarentum.

*Pono castra sex 6 mille passus ab hostis, et tum absum 6 via triduum a Tarentum.*

¶ Cæsar divided his army into five parts, and left one at Brundusium, another at Hydruntum, and another at Tarentum: Q. Valerius, being sent with another, seized Sardinia, very fruitful in corn; by his order Asinius Pollio went for Sicily, which Cato governed.

*Cæsar divido copiae in quinque pars, et relinquo unus Brundusium, alius Hydruntum, alius Tarentum: Q. Valerius, missus cum alius, occupo Sardinia, ferax frumentum; is jussu Asinius Pollio peto Sicilia, qui Cato praesum.*

Whilst these things are doing, it is told at Lacedemon, that a new war was broken out at Athens. King Pausanias is sent thither; who, being moved with pity of the exiled people, restored their country to the miserable citizens, and ordered the ten tyrants to remove to Eleusis.

*Dum hic ago, nuncio Lacedaemon, novus bellum exardeo Athenae. Rex Pausanias eo mitto; qui permotus misericordia exul populus, restituo patria miser civis, et jubeo decem tyrannus migro Eleusis.*

It is reported that a remarkable thing happened at Gomphi: That twenty old noblemen were found in a physician's house, lying on the ground with cups in their hands, without any wound, like drunk men, and one as a physician, sitting in a chair, administering physic to the rest.

*Fero quidam memorabilis accido Gomphi: Viginti senex nobilis reperio in aedes medicus, jacens humus cum calix in manus, sine vulnus, similis ebrius, et unus, ceu medicus, sedens in sella, porrigens potio reliquus.*

After that the ambassadors came to Marseilles, where they found that the affections of the Gauls had been already gained by Annibal; but that they would hardly be very faithful to him, their temper was so wild and savage, unless the affections of the great men were secured now and then by gold, of which the nation was very greedy.

*Deinde legatus venio Massilia, ubi cognosco animus Galli jam praeoccupo ab Annibal; sed vix futurus sum satis fidus, ingenium sum adeo ferox et indomitus, ni animus princeps concilio subinde aurum, quo gens sum avidus.*

Whilst these things are doing, ambassadors came from

*Dum hic ago, legatus venio a Darius, rex Persu,*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

mastered Pompey at Brundusium; but he got off through the barricade of the besieged harbour: scandalous to be said!

*Brundusium; sed ille evado per claustrum obsessus portus: turpis dic tu!*

But at Carthage, as so many commanders were dangerous to a free state, an hundred judges are chosen out of the number of the senators, who, upon the return of the generals from the war, should demand an account of things transacted; that, upon this awe, they might so consider their command in the war, as to have a regard to the judicatures and laws at home.

*Carthago autem, cum tot imperator sum gravis liber civitas, centum judex deligo ex numerus senator, qui, reversus è bellum dux, exigo ratio res gestus; ut, hic metus, ita cogito imperium in bellum, ut judicium lexque domus respicio.*

The king of Persia's commanders sent messengers to Athens to complain, that Chabrias made war with the Egyptians against the king. The Athenians fixed Chabrias a certain day, before which, if he did not return home, they declared they would condemn him to die. Upon this he returned to Athens.

*Praefectus rex Persia mitto legatus Athenae questum, quod Chabrias gero bellum cum Aegyptius adversus rex. Athenienses praestituo Chabrias certus dies, ante qui nisi, redeo domus, denuncio sui condemno ille caput. Tum ille Athenae redeo.*

They brought Cornelius, our consul, deceived by an oath, to their general, as it were for the sake of seeing him, who was at that time sick, and presently after carried him away prisoner out of Sicily into Africa, with twenty ships. They put our general Regulus likewise to death.

*Adduco Cornelius, consul noster, deceptus jusjurandum, ad dux suus, quasi gratia visendum is, qui tum aegroto, et mox abduco captivus è Sicilia in Africa, cum viginti navis. Interimo quoque dux noster Regulus.*

When these things were told Marcellus, he sent ambassadors immediately to Syracuse, to complain of the violation of the treaty; the ambassadors said, that there would never be

*Quum hic nuncio Marcellus, mitto legatus extemplo Syracusae, qui expostulo de violatio foedus; legatus dico, nunquam desum causa bellum, nisi*

wanting an occasion of war, unless Hippocrates and Epycides were banished, not only from Syracuse, but far from Sicily. Upon this Epycides persuades the Leontini to revolt from the Syracusans.

*Hippocrates atque Epycides ablegó, non modo ab Syracusea, sed procul a Sicilia. Deinde Epycides persuadeo Leontini deficio a Syracusani.*

Darius, that he might reduce Greece under his authority, fitted out a fleet of five hundred ships, and set Datis and Artaphernes over it; who came to Attica, and drew out their troops into the plain of Marathon; that is distant about ten miles from the city of Athens. The Athenians, being very much startled at this alarm, sought for assistance no where but from the Lacedemonians; but at home ten officers were chosen to command the army.

*Darius, ut redigo Graecia in suus potestas, comparo classis quingenti navis, praeficioque is Datis et Artaphernes; qui ad Attica accedo, ac deduco suus copiae in campus Marathon; is absum ab oppidum Athenae circiter decem mille passus. Atheniensis, permotus hic tumultus, peto auxilium nusquam nisi a Lacedaemonii; domus autem decem praetor creo qui praesum exercitus.*

After Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the grandson of Numa by a daughter, took upon him the government; he fought against the Latins, added mount Aventine and Janiculum to the city; he built the city Ostia upon the sea, at the sixteenth mile from the city Rome.

*Post Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, nepos Numa ex filia, suscipio imperium; contra Latini dimico, adjicio mons Aventinus et Janiculum civitas; condo civitas Ostia supra mare, sextus decimus 6 milliarium ab urbs Roma.*

Diana had a most magnificent temple at Ephesus. It was supported by 127 pillars, which were built by 127 kings. Each of the pillars was 60 feet high. The statue of the goddess was of ebony.

The father of Pomponius was a lover of learning, and taught his son every thing that a boy could be taught at Rome. Afterwards Pomponius went to Athens. The most noble university of the world was at Athens. Young noblemen and the sons of kings were sent from all parts to Athens.

Cicero, the greatest of the Roman orators, was born at Arpinum. Cicero removed from Arpinum to Rome. The excellent endowments of his mind soon made him famous at Rome. After he had discharged several other offices of the Roman republic, at last he was made consul. Cicero discharged the consulship with so great watchfulness and industry, that he was called father of his country. That honour was given to none before Cicero.

The nation of the Suevi is the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans. The Suevi are said to have an hundred cantons, from which they bring forth many thousands of armed men yearly to fight. The rest stay at home. They live upon milk and flesh, and exercise themselves in hunting.

When Arion, the Lyric poet, was sailing from Lesbos to Italy, the sailors resolved to throw him into the sea, that they might get his money; but Arion entreated, that they would suffer him first to play a tune upon his harp; which was granted. Upon this Arion tuned his harp, and played so artfully, that, by the sweetness of his music, he drew the dolphins round the ship; who, when he was cast into the sea, received him on their back, and carried him to Tenedos.

They say, that the famous oracle of Apollo at Delphi in Boeotia became dumb, when Christ our Saviour came into the world; and that, when Augustus, who was a great votary of Apollo, desired to know the reason of its silence, the oracle answered him, That in Judaea a child was born, who was the supreme God, and had commanded him to depart, and return no more answers.

Mount Vesuvius is distant about seven miles from Naples, rising in the middle of a large plain, above four miles off the sea; from which it is seen gradually to increase in height, till it is half a mile perpendicular above the level of the sea; when it becomes almost circular, being about five miles diameter. This is the basis of the mountain; out of which arises a smaller mount, called Monte Vecchio, four hundred paces high, and at top of near two miles circumference.

---

## 3. TIME.

### *RULE XIII.*

* 61. TIME is put in the ablative, when the question is made by *QUANDO? When?*

| | |
|---|---|
| He died in the twentieth year of his age. | *Vigesimo anno aetatis obiit.* |
| In what period did he live? | *Quo tempore vixit?* |
| Many years ago. | *Multis abhinc annis.* |

*Note* 1. To this rule belong *mane, diluculo, sero, raro, noctu, quotannis,* which are commonly esteemed adverbs; as also, the old ablatives *luci, tempori, vesperi,* used instead of *luce, tempore, vespere.*

*Note* 2. The phrases *id temporis, isthuc aetatis, hoc aetatis, illud horae,* and the like, have *circa* or *ad* understood, and are put for *eo tempore, isthuc aetate, hac aetate, illâ horâ.*

* 62. When the question is made by *QUAMDIU? How long?* time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ennius lived seventy years. | *Annos septuaginta vixit Ennius.* |
| Pluto's gate is open night and day. | *Noctes atque dies patet janua Ditis.* |
| Caligula reigned three years, ten months, and eight days. | *Caligula imperavit triennio, decem mensibus, diebus octo.* |

These two rules may be thus expressed:

*Time* WHEN, is put in the ablative; *Time* HOW LONG

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

62. Homer and Hesiod lived about an hundred and fifty years before the building of Rome.

*Homerus et Hesiodus vivo circiter centum et quinquaginta annus ante Roma conditus.*

Mithridates reigned sixty years, lived seventy-two, and had a war with the Romans forty years.

*Mithridates regno sexaginta annus, vivo septuaginta duo, et habeo bellum contra Romanus quadraginta annus.*

Pythagoras, after he had lived twenty years at Crotona, removed to Metapontum, and there died.

*Pythagoras, cum annus viginti Crotona ago, Metapontum migro, ibique decedo.*

Caligula lived twenty-nine years; he reigned three years, ten months, and eight days.

*Caligula vivo* 6 *annus viginti novem; impero* 6 *triennium, decem* 6 *mensis,* 6 *diesque octo.*

Agamemnon with much ado took one city in ten years, Epaminondas in one day delivered all Greece.

*Agamemnon vix capio unus urbs decem* 6 *annus, Epaminondas unus* 6 *dies libero totus Graecia.*

The labours of many months and years may perish in a moment of time.

*Labor multus mensis et annus intereo possum* 6 *punctum tempus.*

¶ When this was told to the senate, immediately the consul set out with an army, and took a place for his camp, three miles from the enemy. About the fourth watch he marched out of the camp, and the work was carried on so fast, that the Volsci found themselves surrounded by a strong intrenchment at sun-rise.

*Cum hic nuncio senatus extemplo consul proficiscor cum exercitus, et capio locus castra, tres mille passus ab hostis. Quartus vigilia egredior e castra, et opus adeo appropero, ut Volsci video sui circumvallatus firmus munimentum sol ortus*

Whilst the works go on more diligently in the day than they are guarded in the night, a great multitude coming out of the town, armed chiefly with torches, threw fire about, and in a minute of time the fire consumed the mole and the vineae, a work of so long a time; and

*Dum opus fio diligenter dies, quam custodio nox, magnus multitudo egressus ex urbs, armatus praecipue fax, conjicio ignis, et momentum hora, incendium haurio agger et vineae, opus tam longus tempus; et multus mo-*

a great many men, bringing aid in vain, perished by fire and sword.

*talis, ferens opis frustra, absumo ignis ferrumque.*

Datames took Thyus alive, a man of a huge body, and a terrible countenance, because he was black, of long hair, and a long beard; whom the day after he clothed in a fine robe, which the king's viceroys used to wear; he dressed him up likewise in a collar, and bracelets of gold, and other royal apparel, and brought him to the king of Persia.

*Datames capio Thyus vivus, homo magnus corpus, terribilisque 6 facies, quod sum niger, longus 6 capillus, 6 barbaque promissus; qui posterus dies bonus vestis tego, qui satrapa rex gero consuesco; orno etiam torquis, et armilla aureus, caeterque regius cultus, et ad rex Persia adduco.*

In the wings likewise two young men, of an extraordinary bigness, were seen to fight, nor did they appear any longer than the battle lasted. The incredible swiftness of fame increased this admiration; for the same day that the battle was fought in Italy, the news of the victory was told in Corinth, Athens, and Lacedemon.

*In cornu quoque duo juvenis, eximius 6 magnitudo, videor pugno, nec ultra appareo quam pugnatur. Incredibilis velocitas fama augeo hic admiratio; nam idem dies qui in Italia pugnatur, nuncio victoria Corinthus, Athenae, et Lacedaemon.*

In that battle Astyages is taken, from whom Cyrus took nothing else but his kingdom, and acted the grandson towards him, rather than the conqueror, and set him over the great nation of the Hyrcanians. This was the end of the empire of the Medes; they enjoyed the empire three hundred and fifty years.

*In is praelium Astyages capio, qui Cyrus adimo nihil alius quam regnum, et ago nepos in is, magis quam victo, et praepono is magnus gens Hyrcani. Hic sum finis imperium Medi; potior imperium trecenti et quinquaginta annus.*

About the same time there was an earthquake in the parts of the Hellespont and the Chersonese, by which the city Lysimachia, built two and twenty years before by Lysimachus, was ruined; which

*Idem fere tempus sum terra motus in regio Hellespontus et Chersonesus, qui urbs Lysimachia, conditus duo et viginti annus ante a Lysimachus, everto; qui portendo dirus Lysi-*

foreboded dreadful things to Lysimachus and his family, and the ruin of his kingdom, with the desolation of the harassed provinces.

*machus et stirps is, ruina regnum, cum clades regio vexatus.*

The Phoenicians built Carthage in Africa, fifty years before the taking of Troy. The founders of it were Xorus and Charcedon; but, as the Romans and Carthaginians themselves believe, Dido, a woman who had come from Tyre into those parts, whose husband, Pygmalion, who ruled at Tyre, had slain.

*Phoenices condo Carthugo in Africa, quinquaginta annus ante captus Ilium. Conditor sum Xorus et Charcedon; sed, ut Romani, et Carthaginienses ipse existimo, Dido, mulier qui venio Tyrus in is locus, qui maritus, Pygmalion, qui potior res Tyrus, interficio.*

The Spartans at that time had so far degenerated from their ancestors, that whereas the bravery of the citizens had been for several ages a wall to the city, the citizens then thought they could not be secure, unless they lay lurking within walls. But much about the same time the troubled state of Macedonia recalled home Cassander from Greece.

*Spartani is tempus tantum degenero a majores, ut cum virtus civis multus 6 seculum sum murus urbs, civis tunc existimo sui non forem salvus, nisi intra murus lateo. Sed idem fere tempus turbatus status Macedonia revoco domus Cassander a Graecia.*

Hiero, being born of a maid-servant, was exposed by his father, as the disgrace of his family; but bees for several days fed the infant, destitute of human assistance, with honey. For which reason, the father, being encouraged to it by the answer of the Haruspices, takes home the child, and with the utmost care educates him for the hopes of the majesty that was promised.

*Hiero, ex ancilla natus, a pater expono, velut dehonestamentum genus; sed apis multus 6 dies alo parvulus, humanus opis egens, mĕl. Ob qui res pater, admonitus responsum Aruspex, recolligo parvulus, omnisque studium instituo ad spes majestas qui promitto*

Prodigies in the heavens had foretold the future greatness of Mithridates: for both the year

*Coelestis ostentum praedico futurus magnitudo Mithridates: nam et is*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*Triginta millibus dixistis eum habitare.* Ter. *Vix drachmis est obsonatum decem.* And to adjectives; as, Senec. *Quod non opusest, asse carum est.* Plaut. *Vile est viginti minis.* Propert. *Auro venalia jura.* This ablative, however, depends neither on the verb nor adjective, but is governed by the preposition *pro* understood; which too is sometimes, though more rarely, expressed; as, Liv. *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret.* Lucil. *Vendunt, quod pro minore emptum.* To the genitives *tanti, quanti,* &c. in No. 64. following, we may understand *pro aeris pretio,* seu *pondere;* or *pro pretii,* vel *ponderis aere.*

*Note* 2. To the verb *valeo* is sometimes subjoined an accusative of price, the preposition *ad* being understood; as, Varr. *Denarii dicti, quod denos aeris valebant.*

*Note* 3. These ablatives, *magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo,* often occur without any substantive; as, Senec. *Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.* Cic. *Permagno decumas vendidisti.*

* 64. These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted.

| | |
|---|---|
| How much cost it? | *Quanti constitit?* |
| A shilling and more. | *Asse et pluris.* |

*Note* 1. To these adjectives add their compounds, *quanticunque, quantiquanti, tantidem;* as, Senec. *Non concupisces ad libertatem quanticunque pervenire.* Cic. *Quantiquanti, bene emitur quod necesse est.* Id. *Ibi tantidem frumentum emeret, quanti domi vendidisset.* To which add *majoris;* as, Phaed. *Multo majoris alapae mecum veneunt.*

*Note* 2. If the substantive be expressed, these genitives are turned into the ablative; as, Cic. *Authepsa illa, quam tanto pretio mercatus est.* Juv. *Quanto metiris pretio?* Gell. *Mercatur libros minore pretio.* Liv. *Nec majore pretio redimi possumus.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 63. Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents. | *Isocrates vendo unus oratio viginti talentum.* |
| Nothing costs dearer than that which is bought with prayers. | *Nullus res care consto quam qui precis emo.* |
| That victory cost the Carthaginians much blood and wounds. | *Is victoria sto Poeni multus sanguis ac vulnus.* |
| Despise pleasure; pleasure hurts when bought with pain. | *Sperno voluptas; voluptas emptus dolor noceo.* |
| A great many posts are sold for gold, but wise men do not buy hope at a great price. | *Plurimus honor veneo aurum, sed sapiens non emo spes magnus pretium.* |
| Fish-ponds are built at a great expense, filled at a great expense, and maintained at a great expense. | *Piscina aedifico magnum, impleo magnum, et alo magnum.* |
| 64. Merchants use to sell their goods at as high a rate as they can. | *Mercator soleo vendo res suus tantum quantum possum.* |
| Those things please more, which are bought at a dearer rate. | *Magis ille juvo, qui plus emo.* |

The fisher may be bought sometimes for less than his fish.

*Piscator interdum possum emo minus quam piscis.*

Nothing shall cost a father less than his son; but Demosthenes taught nobody for less than a talent.

*Res nullus minus consto pater quam filius; sed Demosthenes doceo nemo minus talentum.*

¶ I have Virgil, with *notae variorum*, which cost me five shillings; besides Horace, with notes for the use of the Dauphin, which cost me five shillings and sixpence; I have likewise Cicero's select orations, with notes for the use of the Dauphin, which I bought for four shillings.

*Sum ego Virgilius, cum nota varius, qui consto ego quinque solidus; praeterea Horatius, cum nota in usus Delphinus, qui consto ego quinque solidus et sex as; habeo etiam Cicero selectus oratio, cum nota in usus Delphinus, qui emo quatuor solidus.*

Whilst these things are doing, one of Alexander's friends, whose name was Hephaestion, died; he was very dear to Alexander, who lamented his death above measure, and made him a monument that cost twelve thousand talents, and ordered him to be worshipped as a god after his death.

*Dum hic ago, unus amicus Alexander, qui nomen sum Hephaestion, decedo; sum percarus Alexander, qui lugeo is mors supra modus, et facio is monumentum, qui consto duodecim mille talentum, et jubeo is colo ut deus post mors.*

Lycurgus, the son of Eunomus, who reigned at Lacedemon, was a famous lawgiver. He ordered every thing to be purchased not with money, but with exchanges of merchandise. He abolished the use of gold and silver, as the occasion of all wickedness. He divided the administration of the commonwealth among the states; to the king he granted the power of war, to the senate the guard of the laws.

*Lycurgus, filius Eunomus, qui regno Lacedaemon, sum inclytus legislator. Jubeo singulus emo, non pecunia, sed compensatio merx. Tollo usus aurum argentumque, velut materia omnis scelus. Divido administratio respublica per ordo; rex potestas bellum permitto, senatus custodia lex.*

Whilst Alexander, the following year, enters upon the Persian war, that had been be-

*Dum Alexander, posterus annus, aggredior Persicus bellum, inchoatus a*

gun by his father, he is informed, that the Thebans and Athenians had revolted from him to the Persians, and that the author of that revolt was Demosthenes the orator, having been bribed by the Persians with a great sum of gold, namely, with two hundred talents and more.

*pater, certior fio, Thebani et Athenienses deficio a sui ad Persae, auctorque is defectio existo Demosthenes orator, corruptus a Persae magnus pondus aurum, nempe ducenti talentum et plus.*

The Gauls, when the country that had produced them, could not contain them, sent out, in the beginning of summer, three hundred thousand men, to seek new habitations; who passed the insuperable summits of the Alps; and such was the terror of the Gallic name, that kings not attacked did of their own accord purchase peace with a large sum.

*Galli, cum terra qui gigno is non capio, mitto, initium aestas, trecenti mille homo, ad quaerendus novus sedes; qui transcendo invictus jugum Alpes; tantusque sum terror Gallicus nomen, ut rex non lacessitus ultro mercor pax ingens pecunia.*

Parmenio, ignorant of Alexander's illness, had written to him, to beware of his physician, that he was corrupted by Darius with a great sum of money; Alexander, however, thought it safer to trust the doubtful faith of the physician than perish; he therefore took the cup, delivered the letter to the doctor, and as he drank, he fixed his eyes on his countenance as he read.

*Parmenio, ignarus Alexander infirmitas, scribo ad is, ut caveo a medicus, ille corrumpo a Darius ingens pecunia; Alexander, tamen reor tutus credo dubius fides medicus quam pereo; accipio igitur poculum, trado epistola medicus, et, inter bibendum, intendo oculus in vultus legens.*

In the island of Rhodes Apollo had a statue, called Colossus, 70 cubits high; which was erected at the mouth of the harbour. One man could scarce grasp its thumb. The distance between its legs was 15 or 20 cubits at least; for a large ship, with tall masts, could easily pass betwixt its shanks. This statue cost 300 talents and more.

Sarah, Abraham's wife, died at Kirjatharba, in the land of Canaan, being 127 years old. As Abraham at this time was a stranger in that country, he applied to Ephron the Hittite, begging that he would allow him a piece of ground for a burial-place. Ephron answered Abraham, saying, The cave of Machpelah, and the field wherein it is, are mine: I compliment you both with the field, and the cave; bury thy dead. Abraham bowed down himself before Ephron, returned him thanks, and said, I rather chuse to purchase the field for as much as it is worth; I pray thee, accept of a price. Ephron replied, The field is worth 400 shekels of silver, but what is that betwixt me and thee? Abraham paid down the money to Ephron, and then buried Sarah his wife.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

The enemy, after they knew of his coming, having raised great forces, attacked our army in their march.

*Hostis, cognitus is ad ventus, coactus magnus copiae, adorior noster agmen in iter.*

Laevinus, after having recovered all Sicily, after having humbled Macedonia, returned with great glory to Rome.

*Laevinus, omnis Sicilia receptus, Macedonia fractus, cum ingens gloria Roma regredior.*

This matter being proposed to a council, when he found they all thought the same thing, he appoints the next day for the battle.

*Hic res delatus, ad concilium, cum cognosco omnis sentio idem, constituo proximus dies pugna.*

Drawing out his forces about break of day, and having formed them into two lines, he waited to see what measures the enemy would take.

*Productus copiae primus lux, et duplex acies institutus, exspecto quid consilium hostis capio.*

Nero committed many parricides: after putting to death his brother, wife, and mother, he fired the city of Rome.

*Nero multus parricidium committo: frater, uxor et mater interfectus, urbs Roma incendo.*

In the room of Aeneas, Ascanius his son succeeded; who, leaving Lavinium, built Longa Alba, which was the metropolis of the kingdom for three hundred years.

*In locus Aeneas, Ascanius filius succedo: qui, relictus Lavinium, condo Alba Longa, qui sum caput regnum trecenti 6 annus.*

¶ Alexander, when he had overrun India, came to a rock of wonderful ruggedness and height, into which many people had fled; and when he understood that Hercules had been restrained by an earthquake from the taking of that rock, being seized with a desire of outdoing the actions of Hercules, he made himself master of the rock with the utmost fatigue and danger.

*Alexander, peragratus India, pervenio ad saxum mirus asperitas et altitudo, in qui multus populus confugio: et ubi cognosco Hercules prohibitus terra motus ab expugnatio idem saxum, captus cupido superandum factum Hercules, potior saxum cum summus labor ac periculum.*

The Roman people, after Cæsar and Pompey were slain, seemed to have returned to

*Populus Romanus, Cæsar et Pompeius trucidatus, videor redeo in pris*

their former state of liberty; and they would have returned, had not Pompey left children, or Cæsar an heir, or, which was more fatal than either, had not Antony, the rival of Cæsar's power, the incendiary and firebrand of the following age, survived.

*tinus status libertas; et redeo, nisi Pompeius relinquo liberi, aut Cæsar haeres, vel, qui sum perniciosus uterque, si non Antonius, aemulus Cæsarianus potentia, fax et turbo sequens seculum, supersum.*

Hannibal being called home to defend his country, was desirous to make an end of the war by treaty, the wealth of his country being now exhausted; but the articles were not agreed to. A few days after this he engaged with Scipio at Zama, and being routed, (incredible to be said,) in two days and two nights he came to Adrumetum, which is about three hundred miles distant from Zama.

*Hannibal revocatus defensum patria, cupio compono bellum, facultas patria jam exhaustus; sed conditio non convenio. Pauci dies post is confligo cum Scipio apud Zama, et pulsus, (incredibilis dictu,) 6 biduum et duo 6 nox Adrumetum pervenio, qui absum circiter trecenti mille passus a Zama.*

Galba, having fought some successful skirmishes, and having taken several of their forts, deputies too being sent to him from all parts, and a peace concluded, resolves to quarter two cohorts among the Nantuates, and to winter himself with the other cohorts of that legion in a village of the Veragri which is called Octodurus; and as it was divided into two parts by a torrent, one part of the village he assigned to the Gauls, the other he allotted for the cohorts to winter in.

*Galba, secundus aliquot praelium factus, expugnatusque complures is castellum, legatus quoque missus ad is undique, et pax factus, constituo colloco duo cohors in Nantuates, et hiemo ipse cum reliquus is legio cohors, in vicus Veragri, qui appello Octodurus; et quum hic in duo pars flumen divido, alter pars is vicus Galli concedo, alter cohors ad hiemandum attribuo.*

The state of the Juhones in alliance with us was afflicted with a sudden calamity; for fires issuing from the earth, every where seized their towns, farms, and dwellings;

*Civitas Juhones socius ego affligo improvisus malum; nam ignis, terra editus, passim corripio villa, arvum, et vicus; neque extinguo possum.*

nor could they be extinguished. During the same year too, the tree Ruminalis, that, eight hundred and forty years ago, had sheltered the infancy of Remus and Romulus, was broken down, its branches being dead, and its trunk withered.

*Idem quoque annus, arbor Ruminalis, qui, octingenti et quadraginta annus ante, tego infantia Remus Romulusque, deminuo, mortuus ramale, et arescens truncus.*

Alexander died three and thirty-years and a month old; a man endowed with a greatness of soul above human power. Some omens of his future greatness appeared at his birth; for the day on which he was born, two eagles sat all day upon the top of his father's house; the same day too his father received the news of two victories. After the time of his boyship was over, he grew up under Aristotle, the famous teacher of all the philosophers. Upon his coming to the kingdom, he ordered himself to be called the king of all the earth and the world. When he was present, his soldiers feared the arms of no enemy.

*Alexander decedo tres et triginta annus et unus mensis natus; vir praeditus magnitudo animus supra humanus potentia. Nonnullus prodigium futurus magnitudo in ipse ortus appareo; nam is dies qui nascor, duo aquila sedeo totus 6 dies supra culmen domus pater is; idem quoque dies pater accipio nuntius duo victoria. Exactus pueritia, cresco sub Aristoteles, inclytus doctor omnis philosophus. Acceptus imperium, jubeo sui appello rex omnis terra ac mundus. Ille praesens, miles timeo arma nullus hostis.*

The Carthaginians, upon hearing this answer, sent for Hannibal home. He, as soon as he returned, was made praetor, in the two and twentieth year after he had been king. For at Carthage every year two kings were made, as consuls are at Rome. The year after his praetorship, when M. Claudius, and L. Furius were consuls, ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage; and Hannibal, supposing they were

*Carthaginienses, hic responsum cognitus, revoco Hannibal domus. Hic, ut redeo, praetor fio, annus secundus et vicesimus postquam rex sum. Carthago enim quotannis binus rex creo, ut consul Roma. Annus post praetura, M. Claudius, L. Furius con sul, legatus Roma Carthago venio; et Hannibal, hic sui exposcendus gratia missus ratus, conscendo na-*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

3. The adverbs of quantity are; *abunde, affatim, largiter nimis, quoad,** *satis, parum, minime.*

The words *ergo, for the sake, instar*, and *partim*, usually added here, are real substantives.

*Note* 1. *Pridie* and *postridie* govern the genitive or the accusative; as, Cic. *Pridie ejus diei.* Caes. *Postridie ejus diei.* Cic. *Pridie quinquatrus.* Id. *Postridie ludos Apollinares.* Thus *pridie, postridie, Kalendas, Nonas, Idus,* seldom *Kalendarum,* &c.

*Note* 2. The adverbs *en, ecce,* take the nominative or the accusative; as, Cic. *En causa, cur dominum servus accuset.* Senec. *En Paridis hostem.* Cic. *Ecce multo major dissensio.* Plaut. *Ecce rem.*

*Note* 3. To these constructions the words *negotium, res, locus, tempus,* or the like, with some preposition, is understood. Thus, *Interea loci,* i. e. *inter ea negotia loci. Ubi terrarum,* i. e. *ubi in negotio terrarum. Quo gentium,* i. e. *cui negotio* vel *loco gentium.*† *Abunde potentiae,* i. e. *abunde de re potentiae.* And *Pridie ejus diei,* i. e. *pridie ante tempus ejus diei.* To *en* and *ecce* some verb is understood; as, *En Priamus,* sc. *adest. Ecce duas aras,* sc. *videtis.*

* 67. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives.

| | |
|---|---|
| Most elegantly of all. | *Elegantissimé omnium.* |
| Agreeably to nature. | *Congruenter naturae.* |
| A foot high. | *Alte pedem.* |
| Beyond expectation. | *Amplius opinione.* |

*Note.* These adverbs require the same supplies, to complete the construction, as the adjectives from which they are formed.

| | |
|---|---|
| 66. 1. Whilst I wandering about am deprived of my country, you in the mean time have made yourself rich. | *Dum ego errans patria careo, tu interea locus tu locupleto.* |
| After this the consul, now unquestionably conqueror, came to the town of Cirta. | *Postea locus consul, haud dubie jam victor, pervenio in oppidum Cirta.* |
| The strength of the Athenians at that time was small, their fleet being sent into Egypt. | *Vires Athenienses tunc tempus sum parvus, classis in Aegyptus missus.* |

---

* Dr. Crombie seems to argue with much critical skill against the introduction of *quoad* under this rule; Vide Gymnasium, vol. 2. p. 251 & seqq. A. R. C.

† From the explanation of *Quo gentium* by *cui negotio,* &c. the author seems to intimate his belief, that *quo* is an obsolete dative, a position which any responsive term readily confutes. It seems, in such expressions, to be neither a dative nor an ablative; but any philological history of this and similar terms is unnecessary and inadmissible here. It is only requisite to put the pupil on his guard against supposing, that in answer to such a question as *quo gentium fugiam?* one might say, *fugias Romae, Athenis, Carthagini,* as our author's *cui negotio* might lead him to imagine. A. R. C.

2. What you was doing, or where in the world you was, I could not so much as guess.

*Quis ago, aut ubi terra sum, ne suspicor quidem.*

He came to that height of madness, that what I should do, or to what part of the world I should fly, I know not.

*Eo vecordia procedo, ut quis ago, aut quo gens fugio, nescio.*

Where in the world are we? Are we come to this pass? Are we come to this pitch of misery?

*Ubinam gens sum? Huccine res venio? Eone miseria venitur?*

I can find my brother no where; but in whatever part of the world he may be, he will be beloved by good men.

*Frater nusquam gens invenio; sed ubicunque terra sum, diligo a bonus vir.*

Let him go to any part of the world, the affair will be in the same condition: virtue every where will find friends.

*Abeo quovis gens, res ibidem locus sum; virtus ubique locus invenio amicus.*

3. Cæsar said that he had got abundance of power and glory, and plenty of wealth.

*Cæsar dico sui adipiscor potentia gloriaque abunde, et divitiae affatim.*

Let him have plenty of old wine, that he may drink day and night.

*Habeo vetus vinum largiter, ut dies noxque poto.*

Too much artifice seems to have been used for charming the ears; he that behaves right will have plenty of applauders.

*Nimis insidiae ad capiendus auris adhibeo videor; qui recte facio habeo satis laudator.*

Will he become an excellent poet who has no courage to dash the words that have little beauty? By no means.

*Fione ille egregius poeta, qui non audeo expungo verbum qui parum splendor habeo? Minime gens.*

97. The lynx is said to see the most clearly of all quadrupeds.

*Lynx dico cerno clare omnis quadrupes.*

I do not ask what he says, but what he can say agreeably to reason.

*Non quaero quis dico, sed quis possum dico convenienter ratio.*

The Sulmonenses opened the gates, and all went out to meet Antony.

*Sulmonenses porta aperio, et omnis obviam Antonius exeo.*

The ground being covered with dung a foot thick, must be

*Terra stercoratus pes alte, in pulvinus redigen-*

formed into beds before you begin to sow.

*dus sum antequam sero incipio.*

The Numidians possess the other parts as far as Mauritania; the Mauri are next to Spain.

*Numidiae teneo caeter locus usque ad Mauritania; proxime Hispania Mauri sum.*

The beauty of Glycera, shining more bright than Parian marble, consumes me.

*Nitor Glycera, splendens pure Parius marmor, uro ego.*

Thus speaks Neptune, and swifter than speech he smooths the swelling seas, disperses the collected clouds, and brings back the day.

*Sic aio Neptunus, et dictum cito placo tumidus aequor, fugo collectus nubes, solque reduco.*

¶ Astyages, being frighted at this answer, gave his daughter in marriage neither to a famous man, nor to one of that country, but to Cambyses, a mean man of the nation of the Persians, at that time obscure. And the fear of the dream not being laid aside even thus, he sends for his daughter big with child, that the infant might be slain under the eye of his grandfather.

*Astyages, exterritus hic responsum, trado filia in matrimonium neque clarus vir, neque civis, sed Cambyses, mediocris vir ex gens Persae, tunc tempus obscurus. Ac ne sic quidem somnium metus depositus, arcesso filia gravidus, ut sub avus oculus partus neco*

The Lacedemonians, having consulted the oracle at Delphos concerning the event of the war, are ordered to seek a general from the Athenians; but the Athenians, when they understood the answer, in contempt of the Spartans, sent Tyrtaeus, a poet, lame of a foot; who being routed in three battles, reduced the Spartans to that despair, that they manumitted their slaves for the recruiting of their army.

*Lacedaemonii, oraculum Delphi consultus de bellum eventus, jubeo peto dux ab Atheniensis: porro Atheniensis, cum cognosco responsum, in contemptus Spartani, mitto Tyrtaeus, poeta, claudus pes; qui tres praelium fusus, eo desperatio Spartani adduco, ut manumitto servus ad supplementum exercitus.*

I know not whether it would not have been better for the Roman people to have been

*Nescio an satius sum populus Romanus sum contentus Sicilia et Africa*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

of Diomedon, said, There is no need of money; for if the king desire those things that are expedient for the Thebans, I am ready to do them for nothing; but if the contrary, he has not gold and silver enough.

*ille, Diomedon coram, inquam, Nihil opus sum pecunia; nam si rex is volo qui Thebani sum utilis, gratis facio sum paratus; sin autem contrarius, non habeo aurum atque argentum satis.*

Next day Cæsar, before the enemy could recover themselves from their consternation and flight, led his army into the country of the Suessiones, who are next to the Remi; and, having performed a great march, he came to the city Noviodunum. After fortifying his camp, having reared the vineae, having cast up a mount, and erected turrets, he began to storm the town.

*Postridie is dies Cæsar, priusquam hostis recipio sui ex terror ac fuga, duco exercitus in finis Suessiones, qui sum proximus Remi; et, magnus iter confectus, ad oppidum Noviodunum pervenio. Castra munitus, vineae actus, agger jactus, turrisque constitutus, oppidum obpugno coepi.*

Micipsa, as Jugurtha was fond of military glory, resolves to expose him to dangers, hoping he would fall, either in making a shew of his bravery, or by the fury of the enemy. But that matter fell out quite otherwise than he imagined; for Jugurtha, as he was of an enterprising and penetrating genius, after he came to know the general's temper, by much pains and much diligence, and by often exposing himself to dangers, came in a short time to so great reputation, that he was a very great terror to the enemy.

*Micipsa, quod Jugurtha sum appetens gloria militaris, statuo objecto is periculum, sperans occasurus, vel ostentandum virtus, vel saevitiahostis. Sed is res longe aliter evenio ac reor; nam Jugurtha, ut sum impiger atque acris 6 ingenium, ubi cognosco natura imperator, multus labor multusque cura, et saepe eundum obviam periculum, brevi pervenio in tantus claritudo, ut sum magnus terror hostis*

Lycurgus suffered the young men to use no more then one coat in a whole year, nor any one to go finer than another, nor fare more sumptuously,

*Lycurgus permitto juvenis utor non ample unus vestis totus 6 annus, nec quisquam progredior culte quam alter, nec epulor opu-*

He ordered young women to be married without fortunes, that wives might be chosen, not money. He ordered the greatest respect should belong, not to the rich and powerful, but to old men, according to the degree of their age; nor indeed has old age any where on earth a more respectful habitation than at Lacedemon.

*lenter. Jubeo virgo nubo sine dos, ut uxor eligo, non pecunia. Volo magnus honor sum, non dives et potens, sed senex, pro gradus aetas; nec sane usquam terra senectus locus honoratus habeo quam Lacedaemon.*

Cotta being asked his opinion, spoke to this purpose: It is the part of wise men to do nothing rashly. I do not think, that we ought to remove from our winter-quarters without the order of Cæsar. Our winter-quarters being fortified, we shall easily withstand the forces of the Germans. You see, that we have bravely withstood the first assault of our enemies. Our enemies, after receiving many wounds, have desisted from the siege. We have enough of corn. Cæsar will not forget his faithful soldiers. What is more foolish, what is more disgraceful, than to listen to the advice of an enemy, in so important an affair? It becomes us to remember that we are Romans.

The Tyrians sent ambassadors to meet Alexander, with presents for himself, and provisions for his army. But when he desired to enter the city, under pretence of offering sacrifice to Hercules, they refused him admittance; which provoked Alexander, now flushed with so many victories, to such a degree of resentment, that he resolved to storm the city, and enter it by force. The city then stood on an island half a mile distant from the shore, was surrounded with a strong wall, 150 feet high, the inhabitants had plenty of provisions, and were stored with all sorts of warlike machines. Alexander, however, by carrying a mole or causey, 200 feet broad, from the continent to the island, transported his army, and after a siege of seven months, battered down the walls, took the city by storm, and fully executed upon that wealthy and wicked city the judgments long before denounced by the prophets.

---

## 2. OF PREPOSITIONS.

68. THE prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

To the father. *Ad patrem.*

*Note.* To the prepositions governing the accusative some add *circiter*, *prope*, *usque*, and *versus*; but these are real adverbs, having the preposition *ad* understood; which with the last three is sometimes expressed.

69. The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

From the father. *A patre.*

*Note* 1. To the prepositions governing the ablative some add *procul*; but this is an adverb, having *a* or *ab* understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Virg. *Procul a patria.*

*Note* 2. *Tenus* is put after its case, and, when the noun is plural, usually governs the genitive; as, Virg. *Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.* Cic. *Lumborum tenus.* But sometimes the ablative; as, Ovid. *Pectoribus tenus.*

*Note* 3. That *a* and *e* are put before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before vowels or consonants, *abs* before *q* and *t*; as, *a patre*, *e regione*; *ab initio*, *ab rege*; *ex urbe*, *ex parte*; *abs quovis homine*, *abs te.*

70. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified.

| | |
|---|---|
| I go into the school. | *Eo in scholam.* |
| He shall go under the earth. | *Ibit sub terras.* |
| It fell upon the troops. | *Incidit super agmina.* |
| He brings him under the roof. | *Ducit subter fastigia.* |

71. But if motion or rest in a place be signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

| | |
|---|---|
| I run or sit in the school. | *Discurro vel sedeo in schola.* |
| I walk or lie under the shade. | *Ambulo vel recubo sub umbra.* |
| He pitched his camp beyond the river. | *Posuit castra super amnem.* |
| He sits upon the grass. | *Sedet super fronde.* |
| The veins are dispersed under the skin. | *Venae subter cutem disperguntur.* |
| They continue under the target-fence. | *Subter testudine manent.* |

*Note* 1. *In* signifying *to*, *into*, *toward*, *against*, *till*, *until*, *over*, *after*, *for*, *upon*, *by*, or *between*, governs the accusative; but when it signifies *in* or *among*, it generally takes the ablative.

*Note* 2. *Sub* signifying *at* or *about such a time*, generally governs the accusative. But when it signifies *nigh to*, or *near a place*, it commonly takes the ablative.

*Note* 3. *Super* signifying *beyond*, *above*, *besides*, *upon*, *at*, or *in time of*, governs the accusative; but when it signifies *about*, *concerning*, *for*, or *because of*, it takes the ablative.

*Note* 4. *Subter* takes very rarely the ablative, and only among poets.

## GENERAL NOTES.

1. The word governed by the preposition is sometimes suppressed; as, *ad Opis*, *ad Dianae*; supple *aedem*. *A Vestae*; supple *aede*.

2. The preposition itself is frequently suppressed; as, Caes. *Circiter meridiem*. Cic. *Prope muros*. Curt. *Usque pedes*. Plin. *Orientem versus*. Virg. *Devenere locos*. Cic. *Magnam partem ex Iambis constat oratio*; sup. *ad*. Ter. *Nunc id prodeo, ire inficias, suppetias, exsequias*: sup. *ob* or *propter*. Virg. *Maria aspera juro*; sup. *per*. Liv. *Procul seditione*; sup. *a*. Caes. *Se loco movere*; sup. *e*. Hor. *Vina promens dolio*; sup. *ex*. Ter. *Quid illo facias*; sup. *de*. Vitruv. *Aliud alius loco nascitur*; sup. *in*. Juv. *Fallit nos vitium specie virtutis*; sup. *sub*.

72. A preposition often governs the same case in composition that it does without it.

| | |
|---|---|
| Let us go to the school. | *Adeamus scholam.* |
| He speaks to his brother. | *Alloquitur fratrem.* |
| He carried the army over the river. | *Exercitum fluvium transduxit.* |

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

After the battle the general began to treat about a peace without delay.

*Post pugna dux coepi ago de pax sine mora.*

Whilst he was sailing cross the river, the boat began to sink, he is wet up to the chin.

*Dum veho trans fluvius, cymba coepi sido, madefio mentum tenus.*

70. Showers are poured down into the vallies, whilst snow falls upon the hills.

*Imber fundo in vallis, dum nix cado super mons.*

The shepherds came under the mountains with their flocks; at length they were forced by the rain to drive them into folds under the ground.

*Pastor venio sub mons cum grex; tandem cogo ab imber ago is in septum subter terra.*

71. Whilst Peter was sitting in the parlour, the boys were playing in the porch, the girls were dancing under a tree.

*Dum Petrus sedeo in coenaculum, puer colludo in vestibulum, puella salto sub arbor.*

The soldiers sat down upon the grass, nigh the shore, where they dined in presence of their general.

*Miles discumbo super gramen, subter littus, ubi prandeo coram dux.*

Phaeton for fear fell from heaven into the Po in Italy; his sisters bewailed his death, till they were all changed into poplar trees.

*Phaeton prae timor cado de coelum in Padus in Italia; soror lugeo mors, donec omnis muto in populus.*

Whilst the war is carried on in Numidia against Jugurtha, the Romans were defeated by the Gauls nigh the Rhone.

*Dum bellum gero in Numidia contra Jugurtha Romanus vinco a Gallus juxta Rhodanus.*

Toward the evening the nobility fled out of the city, passed over into Greece, levied war in Epire against Cæsar.

*Sub vesperus nobilitas fugio ex urbs, transeo in Graecia, paro bellum apud Epirus contra Cæsar.*

Cæsar is sent into Germany, he marches with his army beyond the Rhine, lays waste the country, returns with glory to winter-quarters.

*Cæsar mitto in Germania, pergo cum exercitus ultra Rhenus, vasto ager, revertor cum gloria in hyberna.*

72. The shepherd passes by the village, goes to the city, where he stays a long time; he is ordered to depart from the town, to return to his flocks;

*Pastor praetereo villa, adeo urbs, ubi diu commoror; jubeo decedo oppidum, redeo ad grex; at nolo absisto inceptum*

but he would not desist from his purpose.

¶ Mardonius accosts Xerxes affrighted at this defeat, and doubtful what course to take; he advises him to go away into his kingdom, lest the fame of this unfortunate war should occasion any sedition. His advice being approved, an army is delivered to Mardonius; the king himself prepares to draw back the rest of the troops into his kingdom: but the Greeks, having heard of the king's flight, entered into a design of breaking down the bridge which he had made at Abydos.

*Mardonius aggredior Xerxes perculsus hic clados, et dubius consilium, hortor ut in regnum abeo, ne quid seditio fama adversus bellum moveo. Probatus consilium, exercitus trado Mardonius; rex ipse paro reduco reliquus copiae in regnum: sed Graeci, auditus rex fuga, ineo consilium interrumpendus pons qui ille Abydus fácio.*

Thus, after Atticus had abstained from food for two days, on a sudden his fever went off, and the distemper began to be more easy; he died, however, the fifth day after, the day before the Kalends of April, when Cn. Domitius and C. Sosius were consuls. He was carried to his funeral upon a little couch, as he himself had ordered, without any pomp of funeral, all good people attending him. He was buried near the Appian way, at the fifth milestone, in the monument of Q. Caecilius his uncle.

*Sic, cum Atticus abstineo cibus biduum, subito febris decedo, morbusque coepi sum levis; decedo, tamen, quintus exinde dies, pridie Kalendae Aprilis, Cn. Domitius, C. Sosius consul. Effero in lecticula, ut ipse praescribo, sine ullus pompa funus, omnis bonus comitans. Sepelio juxta via Appius, ad quintus lapis, in monumentum Q. Caecilius avunculus suus.*

In the mean time the Romans, sending the Scipios into Spain, first drove the Carthaginians out of the province; afterwards they carried on terrible wars with the Spaniards themselves; nor would the Spaniards receive the yoke, till Cæsar Augustus, after he had conquered the world, car-

*Interea Romani, missus in Hispania Scipio, primo Poeni provincia expello; postea cum ipse Hispani gravis bellum gero; nec prius jugum Hispani accipio volo, quam Cæsar Augustus, perdomitus orbis, victrix ad is arma transfero, populusque bar-*

ried his victorious arms to them, and reduced the barbarous and savage people into the form of a province.

*barus ac ferus in forma provincia redigo.*

The Dorians consulted the oracle about the event of the contest; answer was made them That they should be superior unless they killed the king of the Athenians. Codrus was king of the Athenians at that time; who, having got notice of the answer of the god, changing his royal habit, entered the enemy's camp; he is slain by a soldier, whom he had wounded with a cutting-knife. The king's body being known, the Dorians march off without fighting; and thus the Athenians are delivered from the war, by the bravery of their prince offering himself to death for the safety of his country.

*Dorienses de eventus praelium oraculum consulo; respondetur, is superior forem, ni rex Atheniensis occido. Atheniensis is tempus rex Codrus sum; qui, responsum deus cognitus, permutatus regius habitus, castra hostis ingredior; interficio a miles, qui falx vulnero. Rex corpus cognitus, Dorienses sine praelium discedo; atque ita Athenienses, virtus dux, pro salus patria mors sui offerens, bellum libero*

A desire of visiting the sacred residence of the god Serapis, whom Egypt, a nation devoted to superstition, adores beyond all other, seized Vespasian, that he might consult him about affairs of the empire; and having entered the temple, and being intent upon the deity, behind his own back he perceived Basilides, whom he knew to be several days' journey from Alexandria. He examines the priests, whether Basilides that day had entered the temple? he asks, whether he had been seen in the city? At last, despatching horsemen, he learns, that he was at that instant eighty miles from thence.

*Cupido adeundum sacer sedes deus Serapis, qui Aegyptus, gens deditus superstitio, colo ante omnis alius, capio Vespasianus, ut consulo is super res imperium; atque ingressus templum, intentusque numen, pone tergum suus respicio Basilides, qui nosco plus dies 6 iter absum Alexandria Percontor sacerdos, num ille dies Basilides templum ineo? percontor, num in urbs video? Denique, missus eques, exploro, is ille tempus momentum octoginta 6 mille passus absum.*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

| | |
|---|---|
| Ah me. | *Hei mihi!* |
| Wo to you! | *Vae tibi!* |

*Note* 1. *Heus* and *ohe* take the vocative only; as, Ter. *Heus Syre!* Mart. *Ohe libelle.*

*Note* 2. *Ah* and *vah* take the accusative or vocative; as, Ter. *Ah me miserum.* Virg. *Ah virgo infelix!* Incert. *Vah inconstantiam!* Plaut. *Vah salus mea!*

*Note* 3. *Hem* takes the dative, accusative, or vocative; as, Ter. *Hem tibi!* Id *Hem astutias!* Id. *Hem Davum tibi!* Cic. *Hem mea lux!*

*Note* 4. Most of the other interjections, and frequently also these mentioned, are thrown into discourse without any case subjoined to them.

*Note* 5. The dative is fitly subjoined to interjections, as well as to other parts of speech; the vocative is absolute; and the accusative may be thus supplied: *Ah me miserum sentio! Vah quam inconstantiam narras! Hem astutias videte! Hem Davum obviam tibi vide!*

| | |
|---|---|
| 73. O man valiant and friendly! O joyful day! | *O* 1 *vir fortis atque amicus! O festus* 1 *dies!* |
| Ah the piety! Ah the faith of ancient times! Ah the vanity of men! | *Heu* 1 *pietas! Heu* 1 *fides priscus! Heu* 1 *vanitas humanus!* |
| Oh the pain! Oh the wickedness! Oh the manners! We degenerate from our parents. | *Proh* 1 *dolor! Proh* 1 *scelus! Proh* 1 *mos! Degenero a parens noster.* |
| O Davus! am I thus despised by you? Ah wretched boy! | *O Davus! itane contemnor abs tu? Heu miserandus puer!* |
| Ah fortune! what god is more cruel than you? you always take pleasure to sport with the designs of men. | *Heu Fortuna! quis deus sum crudelis tu? semper gaudeo illudo res humanus.* |
| O awful Jove! what greater thing has been done on earth? | *Proh sanctus Jupiter! quis res magnus gero in terra?* |
| O the times! O the fashions! O the wretched minds of men! O blind souls! | *O* 4 *tempus! O* 4 *mos! O miser homo* 4 *mens! O* 4 *pectus caecus!* |
| Ah wretch that I am! why am I forced to do this? | *Heu* 4 *ego miser! cur cogo hic facio?* |
| By the faith of gods and men, the victory is in our hands. | *Proh deus atque homo* 4 *fides! victoria ego in manus sum.* |
| 74. Ah me! woes me! love is curable by no herbs. | *Hei ego! vae ego! nullus amor sum medicabilis herba.* |
| ¶ When Titus one day recollected, at supper, that he | *Cum Titus quidam dies recordor, in coena, sui ni-* |

had done nothing for any one that day, he said, O friends! to-day I have lost a day. He was a prince of so much easiness and generosity, that he denied no man any thing; and when he was blamed for it by his friends, he replied, that no man ought to go away sorrowful from an emperor.

*hil quisquam praesto ille dies, dico, O amicus! hodie dies perdo. Sum princeps tantus facilitas et liberalitas, ut nullus quisquam nego; et cum ab amicus reprehendo, respondeo, nullus tristis debeo ab imperator discedo.*

To you, says Alexander, O most faithful and most affectionate of countrymen and friends! I [do] give thanks, not only because to-day you have preferred my life to your own, but because, since the beginning of the war, you have omitted no token or expression of kindness towards me.

*Tu, inquam Alexander O fidus piusque civis atque amicus! grates ago, non solum quod hodie salus meus vester praepono, sed quod, a primordium bellum, nullus erga ego benevolentia pignus aut indicium omitto.*

This was another occasion of making war against Jugurtha; wherefore the following revenge is committed to Albinus; but, O shameful! the Numidians so corrupted his army, that he prevailed by the voluntary flight of our men, and took our camp; and, a scandalous treaty being added for the purchase of their security, he dismissed the army which he had before bought.

*Hic sum alter causa bellandum contra Jugurtha; igitur sequens ultio mando Albinus: sed, proh dedecus! Numida ita corrumpo hic exercitus, ut vinco voluntarius fuga noster, castraque potior; et, turpis foedus additus in pretium salus, dimitto exercitus qui prius emo.*

O dreadful assurance in the midst of so much adversity! O the singular courage and spirit of the Roman people! Whilst Annibal was flying over their throat through Campania and Apulia; at the same time they both withstood him, and sent their arms into Sicily, Sardinia, and Spain. O people worthy of the empire of the

*O horribilis in tot adversus* 4 *fiducia! O singularis* 4 *animus ac* 4 *spiritus populus Romanus! Cum Annibal in jugulum per Campania Apuliaque volito; idem tempus et hic sustineo, et in Sicilia, Sardinia, Hispaniaque arma mitto. O* 4 *populus dignus orbis imperium! dig-*

| | |
|---|---|
| world! worthy of the favour and admiration of gods and men! | *nus favor et admiratio deus ac homo!* |

The Lord is just and righteous, and will judge the earth with equity and truth. Think not, O bold man! because thy punishment is delayed, that the arm of the Lord is weakened, neither flatter thyself with hopes that he winketh at thy doings. The high and the low, the rich and the poor, the wise and the ignorant, when the soul hath shaken off the cumbrous shackles of this mortal life, shall equally receive from the sentence of God a just and everlasting retribution, according to their works. Then shall the wicked tremble and be afraid, but the heart of the righteous shall rejoice in his judgments.

The thoughtless man bridleth not his tongue, woe be to him! he speaketh at random, and is entangled in the foolishness of his own words. Hearken therefore, O young man, unto the voice of Consideration; her words are the words of wisdom, and her paths shall lead thee to safety and truth.

---

## 4. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

* 75. THE conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and moods.

| | |
|---|---|
| Honour your father and mother. | *Honora patrem et matrem.* |
| He neither writes nor reads. | *Nec scribit nec legit.* |

*Note* 1. To these add *quam*, *nisi*, *praeterquam*, *an*; also *nempe*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *nedum*, *sed*, *verum*, &c. And adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, *velut*, &c.

*Note* 2. If the words or clauses in a sentence require or admit of a different construction, this rule does not take place; as, Cic. *Mea et reipublicae interest.* Juv. *Sexcentis et pluris empta.* Boet. *Mulier colore vivido atque inexhausti vigoris.* Sall. *Ubi videt neque per vim, neque insidiis, opprimi posse hominem.* Pers. *Tecum habita, et noris quam sit tibi curta supellex.*

76. *Ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam* and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined with the subjunctive mood.

| | |
|---|---|
| I read that I may learn. | *Lego ut discam.* |
| I wish you were wise. | *Utinam saperes.* |

*Note* 1. To these add all interrogatives, when taken indefinitely, whether they be nouns; as, *quantus*, *qualis*, *quotus*, *quotuplex*, *uter*; or pronouns; as, *quis*, *cujas*; or adverbs; as, *ubi*, *quo*, *unde*, *qua*, *quorsum*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*, *cur*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, *quomodo*, *qui*, &c. or conjunctions; as, *ne*, *an*, *anne*, *annon*. These when used interrogatively, stand first in a sentence, and take the indicative; but when a word goes before them in the sentence, such as, *scio*, *nescio*, *video*, *intelligo*, *rogo*, *peto*, *cedo*, *dic*, *dubito*, or *incertus*, *dubius*, *ignarus*, and the like, they generally become indefinite, and take the subjunctive; as, Hor. *Quae virtus, et quanta, boni, sit vivere parvo, discite.* Cic. *Ut sciam quid agas, ubi quoque, et maxime quando Romae futurus sis.* Ovid. *Nescit vitane fruatur, an sit apud manes.*

*Note* 2. *Ne* takes the imperative or subjunctive; as, *ne time*, or *ne timeas*. After the verb *cave* it is often suppressed; as, *Cave facias.*

*Note* 3. *Ut*, after these verbs, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like; also after these imperatives, *sine*, *fac*, or *facito*, is elegantly suppressed; as, Ter. *Ducas volo hodie uxorem.* Id. *Fac te patrem esse sentiat.*

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him.

*dus, sed ut mundus servo per is.*

I did this that I might escape the more quickly; but do you assist me that it may be done the more easily.

*Facio hic quo evado celeriter; sed tu adjuto ego quo is fio facile*

I will discover the theft, though he threaten arms and death.

*Detego furtum, licet arma morsque minor.*

Be not hasty to speak, take care you do not stammer, take care you do not lose your courage.

*Ne festino loquor, caveo ne titubo, caveo ne perdo animus.*

Virtue procures and preserves friendship: I wish you may do your duty carefully.

*Virtus concilio et conservo amicitia; utinam facio officium diligenter.*

I will come to a conference, provided there be a wall betwixt you and me.

*Venio ad colloquium, dummodo murus sum inter tu et ego.*

¶ In the five hundred and fifty-first year from the building of the city, T. Quintius Flaminius is sent against Philip king of Macedonia: he managed his affairs successfully; a peace was granted to the king upon these terms, that he should not make war upon the cities of Greece, which the Romans had defended against him; that he should restore the prisoners and deserters.

*Quingentesimus et quinquagesimus primus annus ab urbs conditus, T. Quintius Flaminius adversus Philippus rex Macedonia mitto: res prospere gero; pax rex do hic lex, ne Graecia civitas, qui Romanus contra is defendo, bellum infero; ut captivus et transfuga reddo.*

Pompey restored the hostages to the Antiochians, gave some land to the Daphnensians, that the grove there might be made more spacious, being mightily taken with the pleasantness of the place, and the plenty of water. Going from thence to Judea, he took Jerusalem, the metropolis of the nation, in three months, killing

*Pompeius Antiochenses obses reddo, aliquantum ager Daphnenses do, quo lucus ibi spatiosus fio, delectatus amoenitas locus, et aqua abundantia. Inde ad Judaea transgressus, Hierosolyma, caput gens, tertius mensis, capio, duodecim mille Judaei occisus, caeter in fides acceptus.*

twelve thousand of the Jews, the rest being admitted to quarter.

*Vespasianus Titus succedo, vir omnis virtus genus mirabilis, adeo ut amor et deliciae humanus genus dico. Sum vir tantus civilitas in imperium Roma, ut nullus omnino punio, atque convictus adversum suisui conjuratio ita dimitto, ut in idem familiaritas qui antea habeo. Sum etiam facundus; causa Latine ago; poema et tragoedia Graece compono.*

Titus succeeded Vespasian, a man admirable for all sorts of virtues, so that he was called the darling and delight of mankind. He was a man of so much moderation in his government at Rome, that he punished nobody at all, and so dismissed those convicted of conspiring against him, that he kept them in the same familiarity as before. He was very eloquent too; he pleaded causes in Latin; he composed poems and tragedies in Greek.

*Germanicus, ubi finis adsum, ad uxor versus, per memoria sui, per communis liberi oro, ut exuo ferocia, ut fortuna submitto animus; neque multo post extinguo. Idoleo exterus natio rexque, Germanicus ignotus fleo; funus sine imago per laus et memoria virtus celebris sum.*

Germanicus, when his end approached, turning to his wife, besought her, by the memory of himself, by their common children, that she would lay aside her haughty spirit, that she would submit her mind to fortune; and not long after he expires. Foreign nations and kings lamented him, strangers bewailed Germanicus; his funeral without images was grand by the praises and memory of his virtues.

*Alexander Babylon festinans, quidam ex Magus praedico, ne urbs introeo, testatus hic locus is fatalis forem; ob hic causa, omissus Babylon, in Borsippa, urbs trans Euphrates, concedo: ibi ab Anaxarchus philosophus compellor rursum Magus praedictum contemno, ut falsus et incertus; revertor igitur Babylon.*

One of the Magi warned Alexander, as he was hastening to Babylon, not to enter the city, declaring that this place would be fatal to him; for this reason, waving Babylon, he went to Borsippa, a city beyond the Euphrates: there he was engaged again by Anaxarchus the philosopher to slight the predictions of the Magi, as false and uncertain; wherefore he returned to Babylon.

All nations in the west and the south being conquered, the Scythians and Sarmatians sent ambassadors to Rome, begging an alliance; the Seres, and the Indians, that live under the sun, with jewels and pearls, brought elephants too amongst their presents: the length of their journey was so great, that they scarce finished it in four years. Thus every where there was peace; insomuch that Cæsar Augustus at last ventured, in the seven hundredth year from the building of the city, to shut the double-faced Janus. Augustus, for his great actions, was called THE FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY.

*Omnis ad occasus et meridies pacatus gens; Scythae et Sarmatae mitto Roma legatus, amicitia petens; Seres, habitansque sub ipse sol Indi, cum gemma et margarita, elephas quoque inter munus traho: longinquitas via tantus sum, ut vix* 6 *quadriennium impleo. Sic ubique pax sum; adeo ut Cæsar Augustus audeo tandem, septingentesimus ab urbs conditus annus, Janus geminus claudo. Augustus, ob factum ingens,* PATER PATRIA *dico.*

By a virtuous emulation the spirit of a man is exalted within him; he panteth after fame, and rejoiceth as a racer to run his course. He riseth like the palm-tree, in spite of oppression; and as an eagle in the firmament of heaven, he soareth aloft, and fixeth his eye upon the glories of the sun. The examples of eminent men are in his visions by night; and his delight is to follow them all the day long.

A famous critic, having gathered all the faults of an eminent poet, made a present of them to Apollo; who received them very graciously, and resolved to make the author a suitable return for the trouble he had been at in collecting them. In order to this, he set before him a sack of wheat, as it had been threshed out of the sheaf. He then bid him pick out the chaff from among the corn, and lay it aside by itself. The critic applied himself to the task with great industry and pleasure; and, after having made the due separation, was presented by Apollo with the chaff for his pains.

Mankind seem to be no less accountable for the ill use of their dominion over creatures of the lower rank, than for the exercise of tyranny over their own species. The more entirely the inferior creation is submitted to our power, the more tenderly ought we to use it. It is certainly the part of a good man, to take care of his horses and dogs, not only in expectation of their labour, while they are foals and whelps, but even when their old age has made them incapable of service. There is a passage in the book of Jonas, when God declares his aversion to destroy Nineveh, where that compassion of the Creator, which extends to the meanest rank of his creatures, is expressed with wonderful tenderness:——Should I not spare Nineveh, that great city, wherein are more than sixscore thousand persons, and also much cattle? And in the book of Deuteronomy we have a precept to this purpose, with a blessing annexed to it, in these words:——If thou shalt find a bird's nest in the way, thou shalt not take the dam with the young But thou shalt in any wise let the dam go; that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayst prolong thy days.

THE END OF THE INTRODUCTION.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

and degenerating into heathenish practices, broke through all the restraints of modesty and duty.

3. Wherefore, 1656 years after the world was created, and 2348 before the birth of Christ, God, provoked with the wickedness of men, determines to drown the whole world by a deluge. Forty days the waters increased exceedingly, and rose fifteen cubits above the highest mountains; no living creature any where remained, except those which Noah, a good man, saved by the direction of God in a certain large vessel or ark. After the flood the measure of man's strength and life was lessened. From the three sons of Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, all the families of the earth have gradually been propagated.

et in externus lapsus mos, omnis pudor atque officium repagulum perfringo.

Itaque annus post mundus conditus 1656, et ante natus Christus 2348, Deus, homo nequitia iratus, totus terra orbis diluvium submergo statuo. Aqua 40 dies vehementer inundo, et mons altus 15 cubitus transcendo; animans nihil uspiam reliquus fio, praeter is qui Noes, vir bonus, Deus monitus, in arca, seu navis quidam ingens asservo. Sub eluvio vis et vita homo imminuo. A tres Noes filius, Semus, Chamus, Japhetus, gens omnis totus terra orbis paulatim sum propagatus.

## CHAP. II.

*From the deluge to the vocation of Abraham, containing 427 years.*

THE posterity of Noah, about 101 years after the flood, before their dispersion, entered upon a project of building a city and a tower, whose top might reach to heaven. But the divine power checked the insolent attempts of mortals. They all then used the same language, which on a sudden was miraculously divided into a multiplicity of tongues. Accordingly the intercourse of speech being cut off, the building was laid aside. After this the earth began to be peopled. The city thus begun, from the confusion of languages, was first called Babel, and afterwards Babylon. Nimrod having subdued some neighbouring people by force of arms, reigned in it the first after the flood.

2. About the time of Nimrod, Egypt seems to have been divided into four dynasties, or principalities; Thebes, Thin, Memphis, and Tanis. From this period, also, the Egyptian laws and policy take their rise. Already they began to make a figure in the knowledge of astronomy; they first adjusted the

NOES posteri, annus post diluvium circiter centesimus primus, ante digressus, ineo consilium exstruo urbs et turris, qui fastigium ad coelum pertingo. Caeterum superbus mortalis conatus divinus obsto numen. Repente unus, qui tum utor omnis, lingua in multifarius divinitus dispertio. Sublatus igitur sermo commercium, aedificatio abjicio. Ex is terra orbis frequento coepi. Urbs sic inchoatus, ex lingua confusio, Babel primum, deinde Babylon appello. In is primus post diluvium imperito Nimbrothus, vicinus quidam gens vis et arma subactus.

Sub tempus Nimbrothus, quatuor in dynastia, seu principatus, Aegyptus divido videor; Thebae, Thinus, Memphis, Tanisque. Ex is quoque tempus Aegyptius lex politiaque ortus suus duco. Astronomia scientia jam coepi eniteo; ad cursus sol hic pri-

year to the annual revolution of the sun. The inhabitants of this country were renowned for their wisdom and learning, even in the earliest times. Their Hermes, or Mercury Trismegistus, filled all Egypt with useful inventions. He, according to them, first taught men letters, music, religion, eloquence, statuary, and other arts besides. Most historians say, that Aesculapius, or Tosorthus, king of Memphis, first discovered physic and anatomy. In fine, the ancient Egyptians, as to arts and sciences, and the illustrious monuments of wealth and grandeur, have deservedly obtained the preference among all nations of the world. Every body owns, that Menes was the first mortal who reigned over Egypt. But the most famous amongst their princes was Sesostris, who with amazing rapidity overran and conquered Asia, and, subduing the countries beyond the Ganges, advanced eastward as far as the ocean. At last losing his sight, he laid violent hands on himself. The kings of that part of Egypt, whereof Tanis was the capital, took all the name of Pharaoh.

mus annus describo. Hicce regio incola, ob sapientia literaeque, primus etiam tempus sum celeber. Hermes ipse, vel Mercurius Trismegistus, bonus ars Aegyptus totus compleo. Hic, secundum ille, literae, musica, religio, rhetorica, statuaria, aliusque praeterea ars, mortalis primus instituo. Physica ac anatomice auctor, Aesculapius, vel Tosorthus, Memphis rex, plerique sum volo. Vetus denique Aegyptius, quoad ars scientiaque, ac praeclarus opes magnificentiaque monumentum, apud cunctus terra orbis gens, palma merito sum potitus. Menes, mortalis primus, Aegyptus impero, nemo sum qui nego. Inclytus vero inter ille rex sum Sesostris, qui mirus celeritas Asia victor peragro, populusque extra Ganges perdomitus, oriens versus ad oceanus usque progredior. Tandem coecitas laborans, mors sui conscisco. Rex iste Aegyptus pars, qui caput sum Tanis, Pharao cognomen cunctus usurpo.

3. Belus is said to have reigned at Babylon; whose son Ninus caused his father's image to be worshipped as a god. This is remarked to have been the origin of idols. Ninus, fired with the lust of sovereignty, began to extend his empire by arms. He reduced Asia under his dominion; made himself master of Bactria, by vanquishing Oxyartes king of the Bactrians, and the inventor of magic. He enlarged the city Nineveh that had been built by Ashur; and founded the empire of the Assyrians. He himself reigned 54 years.

Belus Babylon regna dico; qui filius Ninus parens suus simulacrum colo jubeo pro deus. Is idolum origo noto. Ninus, impero studium flagrans, imperium arma propago instituo. Asia in suus redigo ditio; Oxyartes Bactrianus rex, idemque magica inventor, debellatus, Bactria potior. Idem Ninive urbs ab Ashur conditus amplio; Assyrius imperium constituo. Ipse regno 54 annus.

4. Semiramis, the wife of Ninus, a woman of a masculine spirit, transferred the crown to herself in prejudice of her son, who was yet a minor. By her was Babylon adorned in a most magnificent manner; Asia, Media, Persia, Egypt, overrun with

Semiramis virago, Ninus conjux, elusus filius aetas minor, regnum ad sui transfero. Ab is Babylon magnificenter sum exstructus; Asia, Media, Persia, Aegyptus, ingens cum exercitus peragratus;

mighty armies: a great part of Libya and Ethiopia conquered. At last she voluntarily resigned the sceptre, after she had swayed it 42 years. But Justin says she was murdered by her son Ninyas.

5. Ninyas degenerated quite from both his parents, and giving up the management of his kingdom to lieutenants, he shut himself up in his palace, entirely abandoned to his pleasures. He had thirty or more of the Assyrian monarchs that successively followed his worthless example, the following ones being always worse than the former; the last of whom was Sardanapalus, a man more effeminate than a woman. He being defeated by Arbaces, governor of the Medes, betook himself into his palace, where, erecting a funeral pile, he burnt himself, his wives, and all his wealth. Thus Arbaces transferred the empire from the Assyrians to the Medes, after it had lasted, as some say, 1300 years. But this whole account of the Assyrian empire is rejected by very good authors as false and fictitious. The history of this monarchy that appears rational, and agreeable to scripture, is related chap. vii. 2.

6. Abraham, the father of the Hebrews, by nation a Chaldean, descended from Heber, is called by God, in the year of the flood 428, and before Christ 1920. Whilst he sojourned in Palestine, the seat promised to his posterity, being pinched by a famine, he went down into Egypt. Returning from thence, he delivered Lot, his brother's son, who had been carried off prisoner from Sodom. After this he paid tithes to the priest Melchisedeck. Moreover, being now 100 years old, having, at the divine command, circumcised himself and his family, he had by his wife Sarah, Isaac, the son promised him by God. Isaac was not yet born, when Abraham, by his prevailing intercession with God, rescued Lot, together with his wife and children, from the burning of Sodom. But Lot's wife, for look-

magnus, Libya, Aethiopiaque pars subactus. Tandem imperium sponte suus depono, postquam annus 42 teneo. At Justinus scribo is a filius Ninyas trucido.

Ninyas ab uterque parens penitus degenero, regnumque administratio praefectus commissus, totus voluptas suus deditus regia sui contineo. Nequitia suus imitator triginta aut plus deinceps Assyrius rex habeo, alius alius nequam; qui ultimus Sardanapalus sum, vir mulier corruptus. Is ab Arbactus, Medus praefectus, praelium victus, in regia sui recipio, ubi, rogus exstructus, sui, cum conjux, divitiaeque suus, concremo. Ita imperium, ab Assyrius ad Medus, Arbactus transfero, postquam, ut nonnullos volo, annus 1300 duro. Sed totus hic Assyrius imperium descriptio ab optimus scriptor ut falsus et fictus rejicio. Historia hic imperium, qui verisimilis et sacer literae consentaneus video, caput vii. 2. enarro.

Abrahamus, Hebraeus parens, genus Chaldaeus, ab Heberus origo traho, a Deus evoco, annus a diluvium 428, et ante Christus natus 1920. Palestina, sedes posteri suus promissus, cum peragro, annona inopia coactus, descendo in Aegyptus. Inde reversus, Lotus, frater filius, Sodoma abductus, libero. Deinde Melchizedecus sacerdos decumae persolvo. Porro, jam centenarius, cum sui ac suus, Deus jussu, praeputium circumcido, e Sara conjux, divinitus promissus Isaacus filius gigno. Nondum nascor Isaacus, cum Abrahamus Lotus, una cum is uxor ac liberi, Deus exoratus, Sodoma incendium eximo. Sed Lotus uxor, quod respicio, in sal sum versus. Abraha-

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ing and scattered people into one body, and to have secured them by cities and laws. But Apollo, Mars, Vulcan, Venus, Minerva, children of Jupiter, the principal deities of Greece, and the great founders of superstition, fell in with the age of the patriarchs; as also Ogyges, the first king of Attica, under whose reign happened that remarkable inundation of Attica, called the deluge of Ogyges. Eusebius places Spartus, the son of Phoroneus, who built Sparta, almost cotemporary with Joseph. Argus, the grandson of Phoroneus, who, on account of his wonderful sagacity, was said to have an hundred eyes, built Argos. Hieronymus too makes Job, so much famed for patience, coeval with Joseph; but others place him much later.

go locus, ac moenia lexque sepio, memoro. At in patriarcha aetas, Apollo, Mars, Vulcanus, Venus, Minerva, Jupiter liberi, praecipuus Graecia numen, et superstitio patriarcha, incido: itemque Ogyges, primus rex Attica, qui regnans memorabilis ille Attica inundatio, Ogyges diluvium dictus, accido. Josephus pene aequalis, statuo Eusebius Spartus, Phoroneus filius, qui Sparta condo. Argus, Phoroneus nepos, qui, ob prudentia incredibilis centoculus dictus sum, Argos condo. Jobus quoque, patientia nobilitatus, Josephus suppar, facio Hieronymus; alius tamen multum junior.

3. About the same time lived Prometheus and Atlas, two eminent astronomers, celebrated in the fabulous poems of the Greeks. Prometheus, the son of Japetus, one of the Titans, is represented by the poets, as having made a man of clay, because he formed men that were ignorant and savage, to a civilized way of living; as chained to Caucasus, because he diligently observed the courses of the stars upon Caucasus, a mountain in Scythia; as having stolen fire from the gods, because he invented the method of striking fire from flint. And his brother Atlas, on account of his great skill in astronomy, is reported to have sustained heaven on his shoulders; and gave name to Atlas, a mountain of Mauritania.

Per idem tempus Prometheus et Atlas, egregius astronomus, existo, fabulosus Graecus carmen inclytus. Prometheus, Japetus, is unus e Titan sum, natus, quod ignarus rudisque homo ad humanitas informo, homo e lutum fingo; quod in Caucasus, Scythia mons, sidus cursus observo assidue, Caucasus affixus; quod ignis elicio e silex ratio invenio, ignis deus surripio, dictus sum a poeta. Atlas autem, is frater, propter summus astronomia scientia, coelum humerus sustineo perhibeo; et Atlas Mauritania mons facio nomen.

4. Moses, the great grandson of Jacob, born about 60 years after the death of Joseph, and 1571 before Christ, was brought up by Pharaoh's daughter, and well instructed in the Egyptian learning. At eighty years of age, admonished of God, and assisted by his brother Aaron, he attempts to deliver the nation of the Israelites from the slavery of the Egyptians. In fine, having struck a mighty terror into Pharaoh, by many very great miracles, he brings

Moses, Jacobus abnepos, 60 circiter annus post Josephus mors natus, et ante Christus 1571, a Pharao filia educatus sum, literaeque excultus Aegyptius. Octogenarius, auctor Deus, adjutor Aaron frater, Israelita gens ab Aegyptius servitus vindico aggredior. Denique, Pharao plurimus maximusque prodigium perculsus, annus post diluvium circiter 857, et ante Christus

forth the Israelites, loaded with the spoils of the Egyptians, in the year of the flood 857, and before Christ 1491.

1491, Israelita Aegyptius spolium onustus educo.

5. The Red sea being divided, the Israelites pass over into the deserts of Arabia; provisions were furnished to them in a miraculous manner; water gushed out of the rocks, and manna descended from heaven. At mount Sinai, the law was given to them by Moses, their sacrifices and ceremonies instituted, and Aaron consecrated high priest. After this, in the 40th year of their journeying, their number being taken at Jordan, the sum of those that were able to bear arms, was above 600 thousand; among whom there was not one of those who had come out of Egypt, except Joshua and Caleb: for Moses, after having taken a prospect of the promised settlements from mount Pisgah, died, Joshua being appointed his successor.

Ruber mare divisus, in solitudo Arabia Israelita transeo; commeatus in divinitus suppeto; manna de coelum, aqua e saxum, defluo. Ad Sina mons lex is per Moses datus, sacra et ceremonia institutus, Aaron summus sacerdos consecratus Inde 40 peregrinatio annus, ad Jordanis census habitus, summa is qui arma fero possum, amplius 600 mille sum; in qui nemo omnino ex is qui ex Aegyptus venio, praeter Josues Calebusque: nam Moses, ex Pisga mons promissus sedes cum prospicio, intereo, Josues successor designatus.

6. Much about the same time that Moses delivered to the Hebrews their religious ceremonies, Cecrops too, founder of Athens, introduced images and sacrifices into Greece. In the reign of Cecrops, flourished Mercury, the grandson of Atlas, the son of Jupiter and Maia, and the author of eloquence and many other discoveries. Deucalion, upon Thessaly's being overflowed by an inundation, saved several persons on the tops of Parnassus, where he reigned; and, by means of his wife Pyrrha, brought them over from a savage and rustic life, to an humane and civilized behaviour. Hence rise was given to a number of fables.

Idem fere tempus sacra et ceremonia Moses trado Hebraeus, et Cecrops, Athenae conditor, simulacrum et sacrificium induco in Graecia. Cecrops regnans, Mercurius, Atlas nepos, Jupiter et Maia filius, idemque eloquentia et multus res inventor existo. Deucalion, obrutus eluvio Thessalia, mortalis complures in Parnassus jugum, ubi imperito, conservo; isque Pyrrha conjux opera, a durus agrestisque vita, ad humanus cultus civilisque traduco. Hinc locus multiplex fabula datus.

7. At the same time, as if the fire had conspired with the water for the destruction of men, a mighty conflagration, in the time of Phaeton's reign, broke out in Italy, near the river Po; which proved no small matter of fiction to the luxuriant fancy of the poets. Oenotrus too, the son of Lycaon, having brought over a colony of Arcadians into Italy, settled near the Tuscan sea, and dis-

Idem tempestas, perinde ac si ad homo pernicies ignis cum aqua conjuro, Phaeton rex, maximus in Italia ad Eridanus flumen exardeo incendium; qui poeta licentia haud parvus fingo materies existo. Oenotrus porro, Lycaon prognatus, Arcas colonia in Italia deductus, ad mare inferus considio, Umbrique indigenae repulsus,

possessing the native Umbrians, peopled Italy. These, called at first Aborigines, from their uncertain extraction, afterwards Italians, from their king Italus, gave name to the country of Italy.

frequento Italia. Hic, Aborigines primum, ab incertus origo, inde, ab Italus rex, Italus appellatus, regio Italia nomen facio.

## CHAP. IV.

*From the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt to the destruction of Troy, containing* 307 *years.*

Joshua, having miraculously dried up the river Jordan, brought over the Israelites. After this he overturns the walls of the city Jericho, by the ark of the covenant carried seven times round it, by the sound of trumpets, and the shouts of his army. He utterly destroys the Amorites, the sun and moon standing still at his command for the space of one day, as spectators of the victory. At last, after conquering thirty kings, and all the nations of Palestine, he settled the Israelites in the country promised to their ancestors, in the year of the creation 2560, and before Christ 1444.

Josues, Jordanis flumen divinitus siccatus, traduco Israelita. Hierichus inde oppidum murus, arca foedus septies circumlatus, tuba clangor, atque exercitus clamor disturbo. Amorrhaeus, sol ac luna, is jussu per unus dies spatium, tanquam spectator victoria, subsistens, occidio occidio. Demum, triginta rex, omnisque Palestina gens debellatus, Israelita in promissus majores sedes colloco, annus post mundus conditus 2560, et ante Christus 1444.

2. About the same time Danaus, causing his fifty sons-in-law to be murdered by his daughters, of whom there was the like number, makes himself master of the kingdom of Egypt. But being deposed by Linus his son-in-law, he seizes upon Argos. Orcus, king of the Molossi, carries off Proserpina, the daughter of Ceres, out of Sicily. Europa, ravished by Jupiter, brought forth Minos and Rhadamanthus, and gave name to the third part of the earth; a large field for fables to the poets. Much about this time flourished the court of the Areopagites at Athens. Upon the Nile too, Busiris, the son of Neptune and Libya, violating the most sacred laws of hospitality, is said to have exercised violence upon his guests. About the same time the Israelites were treated in a way not much kinder by the king of Mesopotamia; but judges, by the divine favour, were raised up from time to time for their relief.

Sub idem tempus Danaus, quinquaginta gener per totidem filia contrucidatus, Aegyptus regnum potior. Sed a Linus gener pulsus, Argos occupo. Orcus, Molossus rex, Proserpina, Ceres filia, e Sicilia abripio. Europa, a Jupiter raptus, Minos ac Rhadamanthus pario, tertiusque orbis terra pars nomen do; ingens poeta materies fabula. Per idem fere tempus Athenae concilium Areopagita existo. Busiris quoque, Neptunus et Libya filius, ad Nilus, in hospes saevio dico, sanctus, hospitium jus violatus. Haud multum humanius sub is tempus a rex Mesopotamia acceptus sum Israelita; sed ad is deinceps liberandus judex divinus munus concessus.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

was afterwards called Troas, from Tros, his son and successor.

postea, ex is filius ac successor Tros, Troas appello.

6. In Latium, Janus was succeeded by Saturn: under whose reign, they tell you, all things were common, and all men free. Hence it was called the golden age. The same Saturn taught men to till the ground, to build houses, to plant vines, and gather in the fruits. Meanwhile the Pelasgi, seizing upon the sea-coast of Italy, which is next to Sicily, introduced learning into Italy. From them the country was named Great Greece. Siculus, the son of Italus, being driven out of Italy by the Pelasgi, passed over into the next island, which the Cyclops had anciently possessed, and the Sicani then inhabited; and the island was called Sicily from king Siculus. After Saturn Picus, after Picus Faunus, the fourth from Janus, held the kingdom. The wife of Faunus, who was also the mother of king Latinus, is said to have invented the Latin characters.

Janus Saturnus succedo in Latium: qui rex, omnis communis, omnis liber sum, perhibeo. Inde aureus seculum appellatus. Idem Saturnus ager colo, domus aedifico, vinea pono, et frux colligo, doceo. Pelasgus interea, maritimus Italia ora, qui Sicilia sum proximus, occupatus, literae in Italia affero. Ab hic regio Magnus Graecia nominatus. Siculus, Italus filius Italia pulsus a Pelasgus, in proximus trajicio insula, qui olim Cyclops teneo, ac tum Sicani incolo; et a Siculus rex insula Sicilia dictus sum. Ab Saturnus Picus, a Picus Faunus, quartus a Janus, regnum accipio. Faunus uxor, idemque Latinus rex mater, Latinus litera reperio memoro.

7. Gideon, the fourth judge of the Hebrews, about the year of the world 2759, and before Christ 1245, performed an exploit that deserves to be celebrated in the annals of all nations. By the direction of God, he selected 300 men out of all his army. These he arms with trumpets and lamps. Then he orders the pitchers, in which the lamps were concealed, to be dashed together, and all the trumpets to be blown at the same instant. This unusual way of fighting wrought such confusion in the camp of the Midianites, that they slaughtered one another with mutual havoc. Abimelech, Gideon's son, was unlike his father: he usurped the sovereignty, after he had put to death his brothers, in number 70. But within three years he was slain by a woman with a piece of a millstone, as he was setting fire to the tower of Thebes.

Gideon, judex Hebraeus quartus, annus mundus circiter 2759, et ante Christus 1245, facinus edo omnis gens litera celebrandus. Deus monitus, vir ex omnis exercitus trecenti deligo. Hic tuba ac lampas armo. Tum lagena, qui inclusus lampas sum, complodo, infloque tuba omnis impero unus tempus. Insolitus pugna species usque eo Madianita castra turbo, ut mutuus sui caedes conficio. Gideon filius, dissimilis pater, Abimelechus sum: is, frater caesus, numerus ad 70, tyrannis occupo. At intra triennium, dum turris Thebetis ignis subdo, molaris lapis, fragmen prostratus sum a foemina.

8. Toward the latter end of Gideon's age appeared the Grecian

Extremus Gideon aetas Graecus heros attingo, haud

heroes, furnishing ample subject for fabulous stories. Hercules, Orpheus, Castor, Pollux, and the other Argonauts, having built the ship Argo, sailed from Thessaly to Troas, and hence to Colchis, under the conduct of Jason. Whilst they were at Troy, Hercules delivered Hesione, the daughter of Laomedon, the son of Ilus, and king of Troy, from a sea-monster, to which she had been exposed. Her father promised him the young lady, with some fleet horses, as the reward of his hazardous enterprise. Being arrived at Colchis, they soothed the fierce and savage guards by means of Medea, the king's daughter; brought off the treasures which had been carried thither by Phryxus out of Thessaly, called the golden fleece. In their return they killed Laomedon, for refusing the stipulated reward, and gave the kingdom to his son Priam. This expedition happened about 1280 years before Christ.

exiguus materia fabula. Hercules, Orpheus, Castor, Pollux, caeterque Argonauta, Argonavis aedificatus, Jason dux, e Thessalia ad Troas, exinde Colchis, navigo. Dum apud Troja sum, Hercules Hesione, Laomedon, Ilus filius, rex Trojanus, filia, monstrum marinus, qui expositus sum, libero. Pater virgo ille, cum pernix equus, labor suus praemium, pollicitus sum. Cum ad Colchis venio, Medea rex filia opera, custos ferus ac barbarus delenio; thesaurus eo a Phryxus e Thessalia deportatus, aureus vellus dictus, aufero. In reditus Laomedon, ob pactus merces negatus, obtrunco; regnum Priamus, is filius, trado. Hic expeditio incido in annus circiter 1280 ante Christus natus.

9. About the same time Aegeus, king of the Athenians, and the father of Theseus, had invidiously slain Androgeos, the son of Minos king of Crete. For which reason the Athenians were ordered to send annually into Crete seven young men, and as many girls, to be devoured by the Minotaur. In the number of these went Theseus, who, by the assistance of Daedalus, and Ariadne, Minos' daughter, slew the Minotaur, and delivered his country. Minos with a fleet pursuing Daedalus in his flight, was killed in the bath by king Cocalus in Sicily. After this Theseus encountered the Centaurs, or Thessalian horsemen, with good success, and associated himself with Hercules.

Sub idem tempus Aegeus, Atheniensis rex, et pater Theseus, Androgeos, Minos rex Creta filius, per invidia occido. Ob qui causa Atheniensis jubeo quotannis septeni juvenis et puella totidem in Creta mitto, a Minotaurus devorandus. Hic in numerus Theseus profectus sum, qui, opis Daedalus, et Ariadne, Minos filia, Minotaurus occido, et patria libero. Minos, Daedalus fugiens classis insecutus, in Sicilia a Cocalus rex neco in balneum. Theseus inde cum Centaurus, Thessalus eques, bene pugno, suique Hercules comes adjungo.

10. The Amazons too, who were women, natives of Scythia, having lost their husbands in war, took up arms, assuming at the same time a masculine intrepidity; possessed themselves of the Lesser Asia, and built Ephesus. Hercules and Theseus made war upon them, and con-

Amazones mulier quoque, e Scythia oriundus, amissus in bellum vir, cum arma, animus virilis assumo; Asia Minor occupo, Ephesus condo. Hic Hercules ac Theseus infero bellum, isque vinco, major victus gloria quam suus: quippe

quered them, more to the glory of the vanquished than their own: for, though women, they had valiantly coped with such heroes, and when taken prisoners, made their escape, by killing the guards. Hercules is further reported to have instituted the Olympic, and Theseus the Isthmian games.

et mulier cum talis vir fortiter depugno, et captivus, caesus custos, aufugio. Hercules porro Olympicus ludus, Theseus Isthmius fero instituo.

11. Much about this time, Greece exhibited scenes of an horrible and tragical nature. Atreus and Thyestes, the sons of Pelops, vented their mutual resentment in a more hostile way than became brothers. For Thyestes committed a rape on his brother's wife: Atreus, on his part, caused Thyestes' sons to be served up to him at a banquet. Oedipus having been exposed by his father Laius, slew him afterwards in a squabble, without knowing him to be his father; and restored the country about Thebes to a perfect tranquillity, by killing the Sphinx, an artful mischievous woman. Having thus procured himself his father's kingdom, he unwittingly married his mother Jocasta. However, being informed of the whole matter by Tyresias the seer, he plucked out his own eyes, and left the kingdom to his sons, Polynices and Eteocles. But Polynices being quickly expelled the kingdom by his brother, fled to Adrastus king of the Argives. Supported by him, he made war upon his brother, attended by the prophetic Amphiaraus, who having been betrayed by his wife Eriphyla, gave orders to his son Alcmeon to assassinate his mother; in this more wicked than his wife, that he made a son the murderer of his parent. During that war Amphiaraus was swallowed up by an earthquake. Polynices and his brother fell by mutual wounds.

Idem fere tempus, foedus ac dirus spectaculum edo Graecia. Atreus et Thyestes, Pelops natus, plusquam fraternus inter sui odium exerceo. Thyestes enim frater uxor stuprum infero: Atreus Thyestes vicissim filius epulandus appono. Oedipus a Laius pater expositus, is deinde in rixa ignarus occido; agerque Thebanus, Sphinx insidiosus mulier occisus, pacatus reddo. Ita paternus regnum adeptus, Jocasta mater ipse inscius duco uxor. Caeterum res omnis ex Tyresias vates cognitus, sui ipse eruo oculus, et regnum Eteocles ac Polynices filius relinquo. Polynices autem cito regnum a frater pulsus, ad Adrastus Argivus rex confugio. Is opes subnixus, frater bellum infero, comes Amphiaraus vates, qui ab Eriphyla conjux proditus, Alcmeon filius, mater ut neco, impero; hic sceleratus uxor, quod filius fac o parricida. Is bellum Amphiaraus hiatus terra absorptus sum. Polynices et frater mutuus vulnus pereo.

12. Jephtha, the seventh judge of the Hebrews, was somewhat later than Hercules. As he was about to join battle with the enemy, he vowed, that if he overcame, he would consecrate to God whatever he

Jephthes, septimus Hebraeus judex, Hercules paulo minor natu sum. Is signum cum hostis collaturus, voveo, si vinco, sui Deus consecro, quisquis revertens primus occurro.

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the treachery of a woman, whom he passionately loved. To them, after they had put out his eyes, he served long for an object of derision. At length, having recovered his strength with his hair, he endeavoured to put an honourable period to his ignominious servitude. The pillars of the house, wherein the Philistines beheld him making sport, he overset; the Philistines who were present, and Samson himself, were crushed to death by the fall of the building, in the year before Christ 1117.

sum. Demum receptus cum capillus vires, turpis servitus honestus quaero exitus. Domus is, unde Philistaeus ludens ipse specto, columna concutio; aedes ruina Philistaeus, qui praesto sum, atque Samson ipse, opprimo, annus ante Christus natus 1117.

3. Ascanius, Aeneas' son, resigning Lavinium to his step-mother, founded Alba Longa. After this the sovereignty was conferred by the people on Sylvius, a son of Aeneas, born after his death. The priesthood was given to Julus, the son of Ascanius, which the Julian family, originally sprung from Julus, enjoyed hereditary ever after. After Sylvius, thirteen kings reigned in Alba Longa, for near 400 years; of whom Aeneas Sylvus swayed the sceptre 31 years, Latinus 51, Alba 39, Sylvius Athys or Capetus I. 26, Capys 28, Capetus II. 13, Tiberinus 8, Agrippa 24, Romulus Sylvius or Alladius 39, Aventinus 37, Procas 23, Amulius 42; whose brother Numitor was the last king of Alba.

Ascanius, Aeneas filius, Lavinium noverca relictus, Alba Longa condo. Sylvius inde, Aeneas filius posthumus, regnum a populus delatus sum. Julus, Ascanius filius, sacerdotium datus, qui gens Julius, ab Julus ortus, postea hereditarius habeo. Post Sylvius a tredecim rev in Alba Longa, 400 fere annus, regnatur; qui Aeneas Sylvius imperium teneo annus 31, Latinus 51, Alba 39, Sylvius Athys seu Capetus I. 26, Capys 28, Capetus II. 13, Tiberinus 8, Agrippa 24, Romulus Sylvius seu Alladius 19, Aventinus 37, Procas 23, Amulius 42; qui frater Numitor ultimus Alba rex existo.

4. Samuel, the last judge of the Hebrews, by God's direction, anoints Saul king, as he was in quest of his father's asses, seven years before Aeneas Sylvius began his reign in Latium. The Hebrew state was managed by judges about 400 years.

Samuel, judex Hebraeus postremus, Saul, paternus asina quaeritans, Deus admonitus, consecro rex, septennium antequam Aeneas Sylvius regno occipio in Latium. Administratus res Hebraeus sum a judex annus circiter 400.

5. The Heraclidae, viz. the posterity of Hercules, who, long harassed by Euristheus king of Mycenae, had lived in exile with Ceyx in Thrace, and afterwards with Theseus king of Athens; at length, about 80 years after the destruction of Troy, returned to Peloponnesus, and settled in it.

Heraclidae, viz. Hercules posteri, qui, ab Euristheus Mycenae rex diu exagitatus, in exilium apud Ceyx in Thracia, deinde apud Theseus Athenae rex, aetas ago; tandem, 80 fere annus a clades Trojanus, ad Peloponnesus redeo, ibique sedes suus pono.

6. Saul, the first king of the Israelites, came to the throne about

Saul, Israelita rex primus, regnum accipio annus post

the year of the world 2909, and before Christ 1095. At first he behaved well, but afterwards offended heinously. Hereupon he was rejected by God, and David chosen in his room. He having slain Goliah, a gigantic Philistine, was advanced to be the king's son-in-law. Saul fell in battle fighting against the Philistines, in the twentieth year of his reign. David, after lamenting the death of his father-in-law, mounted the throne, in the reign of Latinus Sylvius, the son of Aeneas Sylvius, king of the Latins.

mundus conditus prope 2909, et ante Christus 1095. Initium bene sui gero, deinde graviter offendo. Quocirca rejicio a Deus, et in is locus David sufficio. Hic, Golias Philistaeus gigas interfectus, regius evado gener. Saul, vigesimus regnum annus, adversus Philistaeus pugnans, praelium cado. David, socer mors deploratus, regnum potior, rex Latinus Latinus Sylvius, Aeneas Sylvius filius.

7. King David, a man of singular piety towards God, was ever victorious over his foes. He was dethroned by his son Absalom; but having defeated Absalom in battle, he recovered his kingdom. David reigned 40 years.

David rex, homo eximius erga Deus pietas, hostis perpetuo victor existo. Regnum ab Absalon filius pulsus sum; at Absalon acies superatus, regnum recipio. David 40 annus imperito.

8. Almost at the same time that Absalom suffered the punishment of his unnatural behaviour to his father, Codrus, the son of Melanthus, and the last king of Athens, gained the character of a most extraordinary affection for his country. In the Dorian, or Peloponnesian war, being informed by the oracle, that the enemy would prove victorious, unless the king of the Athenians was killed, he devoted his life for the safety of his country. Having disguised himself in the habit of a peasant, he wounded a common soldier of the Dorians in a quarrel, and being slain by him, as he wished, saved his country from a blockade of the enemy; in fact, rather than in name, the father of his country. Upon his death, the government of Athens devolved on magistrates, who were called Archons. The first of them was Medon, the son of Codrus.

Idem ferme tempus Absalon impietas in pater poena luo, et Codrus, Melanthus filius, Atheniensis rex postremus, laus egregius in patria pietas fero. Bellum Peloponnesiacus seu Doriensis, cum ex oraculum cognosco superior forem hostis, nisi Atheniensis rex cado, caput suus pro patria salus devoveo. Rusticus vestitus indutus, gregarius miles Doriensis ex jurgium saucio; ab is, ut opto, interemptus, hostis obsidio patria eximo; pater patria, res magis, quam nomen. Is mors Athenae administratio ad magistratus devenio, qui Archon sum appellatus. Is primus Medon sum, filius Codrus.

9. Solomon, the third king of the Hebrews, reigned also 40 years. He built and dedicated the temple, designed by his father David, in the most magnificent manner, about the year of the world 2983, and before the birth of Christ 1021, in the reign of Alba Sylvius, king of the Latins.

Salomon, rex Hebraeus tertius, 40 quoque annus regno. Templum, a David pater destinatus, magnificenter exaedifico dicoque, annus mundus prope 2983, et ante Christus natus 1021, Alba Sylvius rex Latinus. Salomon, omnis mor-

Solomon, the wisest of all men, in his old age, was seduced by his wives into the worship of Heathen deities. Homer was something elder than Solomon, if he lived, as Herodotus says, 168 years after the Trojan war.

talis sapiens, ab uxor senex perductus sum ad cultus deus Ethnicus. Salomon senior aiquantum Homerus sum, si quidem existo, ut Herodotus perhibeo, annus 168 post bellum Trojanus.

## CHAP. VI.

*From the dedication of the temple to the building of Rome, comprehending 273 years.*

Rehoboam, Solomon's son, by his folly, completed the ruin of the empire, already tottering by his father's misconduct. Thus out of one were two kingdoms formed; the one was called the kingdom of Judah, or Jerusalem; the other that of Israel, or Samaria. The tribe of Judah and Benjamin were subject to Rehoboam, and the other successive descendants of David; the other ten tribes, being seduced and corrupted by Jeroboam, their first king, had princes of very different families. The kings of Samaria were all impious, to a man, and worshippers of idols; the kings of Jerusalem otherwise. And these two kingdoms contended with one another, in almost continual wars. In the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign, Jerusalem was besieged by Shishak, king of Egypt. He carried away all the sacred furniture of the temple. Rehoboam dying in the 17th year of his reign, leaves his kingdom to his son Abijah, Sylvius Athys being then king of the Latins.

2. In the third year of Abijah's reign, Asa, his son, succeeded him—a king of eminent piety, who swayed the sceptre 41 years. In his reign, Capys ruled in Latium; and Omri, king of Israel, built the royal city of Samaria.

3. Jehoshaphat, the son of Asa, proved a second David, for piety.—He held the government 25 years. In his reign lived Ahab, king of Samaria, and the holy prophet Elijah, the Tishbite. Much about the same time Tiberinus, too, the son of Capetus, the ninth king of the Albans, after

Roboas, Salomon filius, nutans paternus culpa imperium, suus stultitia everto. Sic duo ex unus regnum factus: alter Juda, seu Hierosolyma; alter Israel, sive Samaria, dictus sum. Judaeus tribus ac Benjaminius Roboas, ac stirps deinceps pareo Davidicus; caeter decem tribus, a Jeroboas, primus rex, traductus depravatusque, diversus stirps rex habeo. Samaria rex omnis ad unus impius sum, cultorque idolum: Hierosolyma rex non item. Et hic duo regnum perpetuus inter sui bellum fere contendo. Annus imperium Roboas quintus, a Sesacus Aegyptus rex Hierosolyma obsideo. Hic omnis sacer templum supellex deporto. Roboas 17 regnum annus excedens e vita, Abias filius regnum lego, Sylvius Athys rex Latinus.

Abias tertius regnum annus, Asa filius, summus rex pietas, succedo; qui imperium annus 41 teneo. Hic regnans Capys in Latium impero; et Amrius Israelita rex Samaria urbs regius condo.

Josaphatus, Asa filius, pietas alter David sum. Annus 25 imperium teneo. Is regnans, existo Achabus rex Samaria, et sacer vates Helias Thesbites. Idem fere quoque tempus Tiberinus, Capetus filius, rex Albanus ab Ascanius

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

8. About the same time, that is, 409 years after the destruction of Troy, and 27 before the building of Rome, the Olympic games were revived by Iphitus; for they had been instituted before by Hercules, as was related above. The Olympic games were so called from Olympia, a city of Elis in Peloponnesus, near which they were celebrated every fourth year, by a great concourse of people from all Greece, and other nations. From this period the Greeks began to use the Olympiads for the distinction of times. Before that epoch, fiction prevailed. From it the true history of the Greeks takes its rise. In the beginning of the first Olympiad, if we believe Herodotus, died Hesiod, about 140 years later than Homer.

Sub idem tempus, annus scilicet 409 post Troja deletus, et ante Roma conditus 27, ludus Olympicus ab Iphitus renovatus sum; nam antea, ut supra dico, ab Hercules institutus sum. Ludus Olympicus sic dictus sum ab Olympia, urbs Elis in Peloponnesus, prope qui celebratus sum quartus quisque annus, magnus homo concursus ex omnis Graecia gensque peregrinus. Ex is tempus, Graecus, ad tempus distinguo, Olympias adhibeo coepi. Ante is tempus fabula vigeo. Ex is Graecus initium duco historia. In auspicium primus Olympias, si Herodotus credo, Hesiodus obeo, Homerus junior annus circiter 140.

9. Jotham, Uzziah's son, and father of Ahaz, a pious man, and beloved of God, governed 16 years. In his reign, Theopompus, king of the Lacedemonians, in order to render the sovereign authority more stable, by sharing the power with the people, created five Ephori, 130 years after Lycurgus. These magistrates very much resembled the tribunes of the people among the Romans.

Joathas, Ozias filius, et Achas pater, vir pius, et Deus carus, annus 16 impero. Is regnans, Theopompus Lacedaemonius rex, quo regnum, communicatus cum populus potestas, efficio diuturnus Ephorus quinque, annus post Lycurgus 130, creo. Hic tribunus plebs apud Romanus persimilis sum.

10. In Latium, Amulius, having deposed his elder brother Numitor, usurped the crown. Romulus and Remus, the sons of Rhea Sylvia, or Ilia, Numitor's daughter, having been exposed by Amulius, were educated by Faustulus, the king's shepherd. When they came to age, they knew their grandfather Numitor, and, having slain Amulius, replaced him on his throne. They themselves having got together a body of shepherds, founded on mount Palatine the city of Rome, for which was destined the empire of the world. Rome was built in the third year of the seventh Olympiad, 436 years after the destruction of Troy, in the year of the world 3256, of the flood 1600, and before the birth of Christ 748.

In Latium, Amulius, Numitor major frater pulsus, regnum occupo. Romulus et Remus, Rhea Sylvia, seu Ilia Numitor filia, natus, ab Amulius expositus, a Faustulus, pastor regius, educatus sum. Cum adolesco, Numitor avus agnosco, isque, Amulius obtruncatus, restituo in regnum. Ipse, coactus pastor manus, in Palatinus mons condo urbs Roma, qui destino imperium orbis terra. Roma conditus sum annus tertius septimus Olympias, post Troja eversus 436, annus mundus 3256, diluvium 1600, et ante Christus natus 748.

## CHAP. VII.

*From the building of Rome to the liberation of the Jews from the Babylonish captivity by Cyrus, in the first year of the Persian empire, containing 214 years.*

ROMULUS is commonly reported to have killed his brother Remus, for having contemptuously leaped over his new walls. Thus he became sole monarch. He took numbers of his neighbours into his city. He chose an hundred senators, who, from their age, were called Fathers, and their children Patricii. Then, as he and his people had no wives, he invited the neighbouring nations to the sight of games, and seized their young women. Whereupon the adjacent nations made war upon the Romans. Romulus having routed the Caeninenses, and slain their king Acron with his own hand, presented the *spolia opima* to Jupiter Feretrius, to whom he then dedicated a temple. He triumphed over the Antemnates, the Crustuminians, the Fidenates, and Veientes. Upon seeing his army like to be worsted by Tatius, king of the Sabines, he vowed a temple in the Forum to Jupiter Stator. The action being renewed, the Sabine women throwing themselves into the battle, put an end to the war by their intreaties. An alliance is struck up between the generals, and the Sabines remove to Rome. At last Romulus, a sudden tempest arising, as he reviewed his army at the lake of Caprea, entirely disappeared. He was supposed to have gone to the gods. He reigned 37 years.

ROMULUS vulgo féro Remus frater trucido, quod per contumelia murus novus transilio. Ita solus imperium potitus sum. Multitudo finitimus in civitas recipio. Centum senator eligo, qui ab aetas Pater, Patriciique is progenies, appellatus. Tunc, cum uxor ipse et populus non habeo, invito ad spectaculum ludus vicinus natio, atque is virgo rapio. Itaque finitimus populus Romanus bellum infero. Romulus, Caeninenses fugatus isque rex Acron suus manus interemptus, Jupiter Feretrius, qui tum aedes dico, opimus spolium fero. De Antemnates, Crustuminii, Fidenates, et Veientes, triumpho. A Tatius, Sabinus rex, acies suus fugo videns, Jupiter Stator templum voveo in Forum. Demum redintegratus praelium, Sabinus in acies irrumpens, bellum precis dirimo. Percutio inter dux foedus, et Sabinus Roma commigro. Romulus, cum exercitus ad Caprea palus recenseo, subitus coortus tempestas, nusquam appareo. Ad deus transeo creditus sum. Regno annus 37.

2. Niniveh, as formerly observed, was founded by Ashur, some time after Babylon had been built by Nimrod; but continued for many ages a private royalty. For Pul, one of the kings of Niniveh, and probably also king of Babylon, seems to have founded the Assyrian empire. He makes his first appearance in scripture in the beginning of the reign of Menahem, king of Israel, and 771 years before the birth of Christ. This empire lasted about 170 years. The

Ninive, ut supra dictus sum, ab Ashur conditus sum, sero aliquantum quam Babylon a Nimbrothus exstructus sum; sed privatus tantummodo regnum per multus seculum existo. Namque Pul, unus e rex Ninive, et, ut verisimilis sum, rex etiam Babylon, Assyrius constituo imperium videor. Hic mentio fio primo in scriptura sub initium regnum Menahem rex Israeliticus, et 771 annus ante

chief of its monarchs were, 1. Pul, supposed to be the same with Belus. He reigned upwards of 24 years. 2. Tiglathpileser, who is supposed to be the same with Ninus, and who subdued Damascus, and put an end to the ancient kingdom of Syria, reigned about 19 years. 3. Shalmaneser, who besieged and sacked Samaria, reigned 12 years. 4. Sennacherib, whose army, whilst he attempted to besiege Jerusalem, was smitten by an angel, reigned 6 years. 5. Esarhaddon, who carried Manasseh, king of Juda, captive to Babylon, and conquered Egypt and Ethiopia, reigned 42 years. 6. Saosduchinus, in scripture called Nebuchadonosor, who conquered Phraortes king of the Medes, levelled Ecbatan with the ground, and returning to Niniveh, feasted 120 days, reigned 20 years. 7. Chynalydan, supposed to be the same with Sardanapalus, reigned 22 years. This prince, the Medes having made war upon him, and the Babylonians having revolted from him, set fire to his palace, and was consumed, with all his wealth, in the flames. The Assyrian empire subsisted several years after his death; but was in the end overturned by the Medes and Babylonians, in the year before Christ 601. Thus two empires arose out of that of the Assyrians, namely, the Babylonian and Median.

3. From the time of Nimrod to that of Pul, a great many petty princes reigned in Babylon. Niniveh too, and Babylon, seem to have been often governed by the same king. But, in the 24th year of the reign of Pul and 747 years before Christ, these became two distinct kingdoms. Nabonassar, who gives name to the famous era, and who seems to have been a younger son of Pul, gets the kingdom of Babylon, whilst his elder brother Tiglathpileser obtains the sceptre at Niniveh. During the flourishing state of the Assyrian monarchy, the kings of Babylon seem to have been only viceroys or lord lieutenants to those of Niniveh; But afterwards Babylon

natus Christus. Hic imperium annus circiter 170 duro. Praecipuus ex is princeps sum, 1. Pul, qui et Belus sum credo. Is annus 24 et amplius imperito. 2. Tiglathpileser, qui et Ninus sum credo, et qui, Damascus subactus, antiquus Syria regnum finis impono, annus circiter 19 regno. 3. Shalmaneser, qui Samaria obsidio captus deleo, annus 12 regno. 4. Sennacherib, qui exercitus, cum Hierosolyma obsideo conor, ab angelus caedo, annus 6 regno. 5. Esarhaddon, qui Manasses Juda rex Babylon captivus abduco, et Aegyptus atque Aethiopia in suus ditio redigo, annus 42 regno. 6. Saosduchinus, in scriptura Nebuchadonosor appellatus, qui Phraortes Medus rex devictus, Ecbatana solum aequo, et Ninive reversus dies 120 epulor, annus 20 regno. 7. Chynalydan, qui et Sardanapalus fortasse dico, annus 22 regno. Hic, Medus bellum infero, Babyloniusque desero, regia suus incendo, et cum divitiae concremo. Imperium Assyrius aliquot annus post is interitus duro; demum vero a Medus et Babylonius everto, annus ante Christus 601. Ita ex imperium Assyrius duo orior, Babylonius, sciz. et Medus.

A tempus Nimbrothus ad Pul, multus princeps exiguus Babylon imperito. Ninive quoque et Babylon idem rex saepe pareo videor. Sed 24 annus regnum Pul, et 747 annus ante Christus natus, ex unus duo diversus regnum factus sum. Nabonassar, qui inclytus aera nomen facio, et qui filius Pul natu minor sum video, regnum Babylonicus adipiscor, cum interim Tiglathpileser, frater natu major apud Ninive res potior. Imperium Assyriacus vigens, rex Babylonicus, quasi prorex seu praefectus rex Assyria subjectus sum video: postea

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

fore Christ 710. In his latter days he made war upon Saosduchinus, king of the Assyrians; but his army was defeated in a battle fought in the great plain of Ragau, himself slain, and his capital Ecbatan destroyed, after a reign of 53 years. His son Phraortes subdued a great part of the upper Asia, invaded Assyria, and laid siege to Niniveh; where he perished, with the greater part of his army, after having reigned 22 years. His son, Cyaxares I. by a stratagem, relieved his country from the Scythians. He engaged in war with the Lydians; but a total eclipse of the sun, said to have been foretold by Thales the Milesian, happening in the time of battle, both armies retreated, and a peace was concluded. He afterwards, in conjunction with Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, invested Niniveh, and razed it to the ground, in the year before Christ 601. This confederate army soon after overran and conquered Egypt, Judea, Syria, Armenia, Pontus, Cappadocia, and Persia. Cyaxares reigned 40 years. His son Astyages, called Ahasuerus in the book of Daniel, repulsed the Babylonians, who, under the conduct of Evilmerodach, had made an irruption into Media. He reigned 35 years. His son Cyaxares II. called in scripture Darius the Mede, reigned 22 years. He had a bloody war with the kings of Babylon, and their ally Croesus king of Lydia, for the space of 21 years. In this war he was assisted by Cyrus his nephew; who, at last, took Babylon, and placed his uncle on the throne, where he reigned two years. Upon his death, Cyrus transferred the seat of empire from the Babylonians and Medes to the Persians, in the year before Christ 536.

5. Twenty-five years after the building of Rome, So or Sabacus, the Ethiopian, began to reign in Egypt; whose successors, for about 200 years, were Anysis, Sethon, 12 kings jointly, Psammitichus, Necho, Psammis, Apries, Amasis, and Psamminitus.

tus 710. Postremus tempus bellum Saosduchinus, Assyrius rex infero; sed exercitus is fugatus sum, praelium in magnus planities Ragau commissus, ipse interfectus, et caput regnum Ecbatana excidium datus, postquam annus 53 impero. Phraortes filius magnus pars superior Asia domo, Assyria invado, Niniveque obsideo; ubi ipse cum magnus pars copiae pereo, post regnum 22 annus. Filius is, Cyaxares I. civis dolus Scytha libero. Bellum contra Lydius ineo; sed cum sol inter pugnandum defectus totalis laboro, qu deliquium Thales Milesius praedico fama sum, ambo exercitus praelium recedo, et pax factus sum. Hic postea, Nebuchadnezzar rex Babylon adjuvans, Ninive obsideo, et solum aequo, annus ante Christus 601. Adunatus hic exercitus mox Aegyptus, Judaea, Syria, Armenia, Pontus, Cappadocia, et Persia peragro domoque. Annus 50 regno. Astyages filius, Daniel liber Ahasuerus dictus, Babylonius, qui, Evilmerodach dux, in Media irrumpo, repello. Annus 35 impero. Filius is, Cyaxares II. sacer literae Darius Medus appellatus, annus 22 regno. Bellum cruentus cum rex Babylon, isque socius Croesus Lydia rex, per spatium 21 annus gero. In hic bellum Cyrus nepos is auxilium venio; qui tandem Babylon potitus, avunculus summus potestas permitto, qui ibi duo annus regno. Cyrus, avunculus mortuus, sedes imperium a Babylonius et Medus ad Persa transfero, annus ante Christus 536.

In Aegyptus So seu Sabacus, Aethiops, regno coepi, annus post Roma conditus 25; qui successor, per ducenti fere annus, sum Anysis, Sethon, 12 rex simul, Psammitichus, Necus, Psammis, Apries, Amasis, et Psamminitus.

6. Twenty-seven years after the building of Rome, and 721 before Christ, Samaria was taken and destroyed by Salmaneser, king of the Assyrians. The ten tribes, with their king Hoshea, were carried away into Assyria. Tobias was one of the captives, whose piety preserved him his liberty in the midst of servitude. Hezekiah, the son of king Ahaz, a man of eminent piety, was then king of Jerusalem. At this time too, lived the prophet Isaiah.

Annus post Roma conditus 27, et ante Christus 721, Samaria a Salmaneser, Assyrius rex, captus et eversus sum. Tribus decem, cum Oseas rex, in Assyria abductus. Unus e captivus Tobias sum, qui libertas in ipse servitus pietas conservo. Rex tum Hierosolyma Ezechias, Achas rex natus, homo singularis pietas. Hic tempus etiam existo vates Esaias.

7. Numa Pompilius, the second king of the Romans, was called to the throne from Cures, a town of the Sabines, on account of his renowned wisdom. He softened the martial fierceness of Rome by religion. He instituted priests and sacred rites, pretending intercourse with the goddess Egeria in the night. Then he built the temple of Janus, and shut its gates, which were the signs of peace and war. He completed the year by the addition of two months; and, instead of March appointed January to be the beginning of the year. He reigned 43 years.

Numa Pompilius, Romanus rex II. propter sapientia fama, ad regnum e Cures, Sabinus oppidum, vocatus sum. Roma arma ferox religio mansuefacio. Sacra sacerdosque instituo, simulatus cum dea Egeria nocturnus congressus. Janus dein templum exstruo, isque valvae, pax bellumque index, claudo. Annus duo mensis additus expleo. Annus initium Januarius pro Martius sum volo. Regno annus quadraginta tres.

8. Manasseh, the son of Hezekiah, reigned then in Judea. At the same time lived Judith, by whom Holofernes, general of Saosduchinus, king of the Assyrians was slain; Gyges too, who is said to have been the intimate favourite of Candaules, king of the Lydians, and was forced by him to view the beauty of his queen when naked. After which Gyges, at the queen's desire, murdered Candaules, and seized upon the kingdom.

Manasses, Ezechias filius, in Judaea tum regno. Idem tempus existo Juditha, a qui Holofernes, dux Saosduchinus, rex Assyrius sum obtruncatus; Gyges quoque, qui intimus Candaules, Lydus rex, sum assecla dico, ab isque coactus, ut nudus regina species contemplor. Postea Gyges, regina jussu, Candaules obtrunco, et regnum invado.

9. After Numa, Tullus Hostilius, being created king of Rome, made war upon the Albans. The dispute being referred to three Horatii on the side of the Romans, and as many Curiatii on that of the Albans, victory declared for the Romans. The Albans afterwards rebelling, Tullus, after demolishing Alba, ordered them to remove to Rome. Rome being increased by the ruins of Alba, mount Coelius was added to the city. Tullus was thunderstruck, and burnt up with all his house, after he had reign-

Tullus Hostilius, post Numa, Roma rex creatus, bellum Albanus infero. Certamen tres Horatius Romanus, et totidem Curiatius Albanus, commissus, victoria penes Romanus sum. Albanus postea rebellans, Alba eversus, Roma demigro Tullus jubeo. Roma Alba ruina auctus, Coelius mons urbs additus. Cum Tullus 31 annus regno, fulmen ictus, cum domus suus ardeo. Ammon, interea, Manasses filius, et Hierosolyma

ed 31 years. In the mean time Ammon, Manasseh's son, and king of Jerusalem, was assassinated by his servants.

rex, a famulus suus interfectus sum.

10. After Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the grandson of Numa by a daughter, took upon him the government. He proclaimed war by his heralds against the Latins, and vanquished them. He took a great many of them afterwards into the city. He united the Aventine mount to the city, and likewise the Janiculum, by throwing a wooden bridge over the river. He extended the Roman dominion quite to the sea, and built the city Ostia at the mouth of the Tiber. He died of a distemper in the 24th year of his reign. A few years after, Josiah, Hezekiah's grandson, fell in battle, fighting against Necho, king of Egypt. The prophet Jeremiah and all the people lamented him.

Post Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, Numa ex filia nepos, suscipio imperium Latinus bellum perfecialis indico, ac vinco. Is plurimus postea in civitas adscisco. Aventinus mons, nec non, sublicius pons in flumen factus, Janiculum urbs adjicio. Romanus imperium usque ad mare propago, et Ostia urbs in os Tiberis condo. Annus imperium 24 morbus pereo. Pauci exinde annus, Josias, Ezechias nepos, contra Necus, Aegyptus rex, pugnans, praelium cado. Is Jeremias vates et cunctus populus lamentatio prosequor.

11. The fifth king of Rome was Tarquinius Priscus, the son of Demaratus of Corinth. He doubled the number of the senators, built the Circus, and instituted the Circensian games. He subdued the twelve nations of Tuscany, and borrowed from them the ensigns of supreme power, the Fasces, the Trabeae, the Curule chairs, the Praetexta, and other things of that kind. He was slain by the sons of Ancus, in the 37th year of his reign.

Quintus Roma rex sum Tarquinius Priscus, filius Demaratus Corinthius. Hic numerus senator duplico, Circus aedifico, et ludus Circensis instituo. Thuscia populus duodecim subigo, ab isque summus potestas insigne accipio, Fasces, Trabeae, Curules, Praetexta, et is genus alius. Annus imperium 37, per Ancus filius occisus sum.

12. Dracho, who was Archon at Athens, in the year before Christ 623, laid the Athenians under the most cruel laws, by which the smallest offences and the greatest crimes were equally punished with death. For which he himself assigned this reason: Small faults seem to me worthy of death, and for flagrant and great offences I can find no higher punishment. But these laws did not long please the Athenians. Demades was wont to say, that Draco's laws were not written with ink, but blood.

Draco, qui Archon Athenae sum, annus ante Christus 623, atrox Atheniensis lex impono, qui aeque parvus peccatum ac magnus scelus capitalis sum. Qui ipse hic causa trado: Parvus peccatum ego mors dignus video, et manifestus ac magnus scelus magnus supplicium excogito non possum. At hic lex Atheniensis non diu placeo. Demades dico soleo, Draco lex non atramentum, sed sanguis, scriptus sum.

13. In Judea, after the death of Josiah, his son enjoyed the crown three months, and his brother a few years. Josiah's brother was succeeded by Zedekiah. the last king of the

In Judaea, post mors Josias, filius tres mensis, et frater pauci annus, regnum potitus sum. Frater Josias succedo Zedechias, rex Judaeus postremus,

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

their ally Croesus, king of Lydia. This war lasted 21 years. Cyrus commanded the united army of Medes and Persians; and from this period historians compute the beginning of his reign. Cyrus' conduct in this war was glorious, and his success wonderful. He vanquished Croesus, and took the royal city of Sardis; after this he subdued all the continent from the Aegean sea to the Euphrates. He reduced the strong city of Babylon, and delivering the government of that kingdom to his uncle Cyaxares, called also Darius the Mede, he returned into Persia. About two years after, Cyaxares dying, and also Cambyses, king of Persia, Cyrus took upon him the government of the whole empire; which he held for the space of seven years. In the first of these seven years, and before Christ 534, he issued out his decree for restoring the Jews to their country. In the reign of Cyrus lived the prophet Daniel, whom that monarch esteemed with an affectionate regard.

18. A few years after, as Herodotus relates, Cyrus made war upon the Scythians, and cut off the son of their queen Tomyris with his army. But the advantages of the victory proved delusive and of short duration. Cyrus, flushed with his late victory, marches out into a place of disadvantage, where he was trepanned by the enemy, and cut to pieces with all his forces. But Xenophon says, Cyrus died at home a natural death, in the 70th year of his age, and was buried at Pasargada in Persia, leaving his son Cambyses heir to his empire; who, having conquered Psamminitus, annexed Egypt to his father's realm. The Persian empire lasted 228 years. Cyrus reigned 30 years, Cambyses 7, Darius Hystaspis 36, Xerxes 21. Artaxerxes Longimanus, called Ahasuerus in the scriptures, and who had Esther for his queen, 41, Darius Nothus 19, Artaxerxes Mnemon 46, Ochus 21, Arses 2, Darius Codomannus 6.

sus, rex Lydia, auxilium sum. Hic bellum per annus 21 gestus sum. Adunatus copiae Medus et Persa Cyrus praesum, et ab hic tempus imperium apud historicus initium duco. Ut Cyrus virtus in hic bellum sum insignis, ita mirus felicitas usus sum. Croesus supero, et regius urbs Sardes expugno; post hic totus regio inter mare Aegaeus et Euphrates perdomo. Babylon urbs munitissimus subigo regnumque is administratio avunculus suus Cyaxares, Darius Medus etiam dictus, traditus, ipse in Persia regressus sum. Post fere biennium, Cyaxares, necnon Cambyses, rex Persia, mortuus, Cyrus totus imperium administratio suscipio; qui per septem annus teneo. Annus hic septem primus, et ante Christus 534, edictum suus promulgo, qui Judaeus patria restituo. Regnans Cyrus, vivo Daniel propheta, qui imperator ille complexus sum.

Pauci exinde annus, ut Herodotus narro, Cyrus Scytha bellum infero, et Tomyris regina filius cum exercitus caedo. At brevis et fallax sum fructus victoria. Cyrus, recens victoria elatus, in iniquus locus progredior, ubi insidiae hostis ipse cum omnis copiae concido. Xenophon autem aio, Cyrus domus fatum functus sum, annus aetas septuagesimus, et Pasargada in Persia sepultus sum, Cambyses filius heres imperium relictus; qui, Psamminitus victus, paternus regnum Aegyptus adjicio. Imperium Persicus annus 228 duro. Cyrus regno annus 30, Cambyses 7, Darius Hystaspis 36, Xerxes 21, Artaxerxes Longimanus, Ahasuerus sacer literae dictus, et qui Esther regina habeo, 41, Darius Nothus 19, Artaxerxes Mnemon 46, Ochus 21 Arses 2, Darius Codomannus 6

## CHAP. VIII.

*From the liberation of the Jews by Cyrus, to the overthrow of the Persian empire by Alexander the Great, including 204 years.*

TARQUINIUS Superbus, the seventh and last of the Roman kings, derived his surname from his behaviour. He slighted the authority of the senate in the management of the government. He finished the temple of Jupiter which had been begun by his father; he subdued the Volsci; and took Gabii by the artful conduct of his son Sextus. He is said to have purchased the Sibylline books from the Cumean Sibyl. At last he was turned out of the city, and his kingdom too, for a rape committed by his son upon Lucretia, a woman of quality, in the 23d year of his reign, in the 68th Olympiad, and before Christ 506. The regal power obtained at Rome under seven kings, almost 242 years.

TARQUINIUS Superbus, septimus atque ultimus Romanus rex, ex factum cognomen traho. Senatus auctoritas in administrandus respublica negligo. Jupiter templum a pater inchoatus exstruo; Volscus arma domo: Gabii Sextus filius dolus capio. A Sibylla Cumanus liber Sibyllinus emo dico. Tandum, ob stuprum Lucretia, nobilissimus foemina, a filius illatus, et urbs, et regnum ejectus sum, annus regnum 23, Olympias 68, ante Christus natus 506. Regnatur Roma a septem rex annus prope 242.

2. After the expiration of the kings, two consuls were created annually at Rome. Brutus and Collatinus were the first consuls. Brutus, upon the discovery of a conspiracy against the public liberty, punished the conspirators, among whom were two of his own sons, with death.

Post rex expulsus, bini quotannis consul Roma creo. Brutus et Collatinus primus consul sum. Brutus, conjuratio contra libertas patefactus, conjuratus, in qui sum filius is duo, mors multo.

3. About the same time a like incident delivered the Athenians from tyranny. Hipparchus, the son of Pisistratus, had debauched Harmodius' sister. Whereupon Harmodius slays the tyrant. Being forced with torture, by Hippias, the tyrant's brother, to name those that were accessary to the murder, he named the tyrant's friends; who were all immediately put to death by the tyrant. The citizens, roused by his magnanimity, banishing Hippias, restored themselves to liberty. They erected a statue to Harmodius.

Atheniensis per idem tempus par causa tyrannis libero. Hipparchus, Pisistratus natus, Harmodius soror violo. Itaque Harmodius tyrannus obtrunco. Ab Hippias, tyrannus frater, nomino caedes conscius tormentum coactus, tyrannus amicus nomino; qui omnis statim a tyrannus interficio. Hic virtus excitatus civis, Hippias pulsus, sui in libertas assero. Harmodius statua pono.

4. Cambyses, king of the Persians, caused his brother Smerdis to be assassinated, because he had dreamed that he saw him on the throne. Cambyses died soon after of a wound by his own sword dropping accidentally

Cambyses, rex Persa, frater suus Smerdis interficiendus curo, quod per quies is regno video. Paulo post Cambyses, gladius e vagina delapsus, vulneratus intereo. Patizithes

out of the sheath. Patizithes, one of the Magi, concealing the death of Smerdis, put up his own brother Oropastes in his room, who, personating Smerdis, obtained the sovereignty. But the imposture being soon discovered, the pretended king, with his brother, was taken off by the grandees of Persia.

unus e magus, celatus mors Smerdis, frater suus Oropastes pro is suppono, qui, sui Smerdis sum simulans, regnum potior. Sed fraus cito patefactus, pseudo-rex, cum frater, a Persa princeps confodio.

5. The grandees who had despatched Oropastes, agreed among themselves to come to the palace before sunrise, and that he whose horse neighed first, should be king. The horse of Darius, the son of Hystaspis, neighed first, and procured his owner the kingdom.

Princeps, qui Oropastes neco, inter sui paciscor, ut ad regia ante sol ortus venio, et ut is, qui equus hinnitus primus edo, rex sum. Equus Darius, Hystaspis filius, hinnitus primus edo, et dominus regnum pario.

6. Darius Hystaspis being thus created king of the Persians, granted leave to the Jews to finish the temple of Jerusalem; the prophet Haggai at the same time encouraging them thereto. Babylon, which had revolted from the Persians, he recovered by the artifice of his friend Zopyrus. For he, having cut off his nose and ears, made the Babylonians believe he had fled over to them, on having been barbarously used by Darius. Accordingly he betrayed the city, with which they intrusted him, to Darius.

Darius Hystaspis rex Persa sic creatus, Judaeus potestas templum Hierosolyma absolvendus facio; adhortans simul Haggai propheta. Babylon, qui a Persa descisco, Zopyrus amicus dolus recipio. Quippe is, nasus sui et auris desectus, fides facio, Babylonius, sui, a Darius crudeliter tractatus, ad is confugio. Itaque urbs, suus fides ab ille creditus, Darius prodo.

7. Tarquinius Superbus, being banished from Rome, implored the assistance of Porsenna, king of the Hetrusci; who, waging war with the Romans, possessed himself of the Janiculum. Horatius Cocles alone sustained the assaults of the enemy on the Sublician bridge, for a considerable time, till the bridge was cut down behind him. Then he plunged into the Tiber, and swam over safe to the Romans, amidst the darts of the enemy. Cloelia too, a Roman lady, one of the hostages, having eluded her keepers, swam over the Tiber, amidst the darts of the Hetrusci. Moreover, Mutius Scaevola, in order to deliver his country from the enemy's blockade, conveys himself into their camp, and, instead of the king, by mistake kills his secretary. Being carried before the king to be examined, he thrusts his right hand into the fire, and burns it; and at the same time declares to the

Tarquinius Superbus Roma exactus, Porsenna Hetruscus rex auxilium imploro; qui, bellum Romanus illatus, Janiculum occupo. Hostis impetus Horatius Cocles tamdiu, sustineo in Sublicius pons solus, quoad pons a tergum rescindo. Inde in Tiberis desilio, atque inter hostis telum incolumis ad Romanus trano. Cloelia quoque, virgo Romanus, unus ex obsēs, elusus custos, Tiberis inter Hetruscus telum trano. Mutius porro Scaevola, ut patria obsidio hostis eximo, in is castra sui insinuo, per error scriba pro rex obtrunco. Ad tribunal rex retractus, dextra foculus injicio, atque exuro; simulque rex, trecenti Romanus idem ratio in caput is conjuro, denuncio. Itaque Porsenna, pax cum Romanus factus, domus redeo.

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

war, by whose interest he had been expelled, sacrificing private wrongs to the good of his country.

13. At Rome the Fabian family, to ease their country of trouble, petitioned for the entire management of the Veientian war to themselves. They defeated the Veientes several times. Being now victorious, they were almost utterly destroyed by a stratagem of the enemy; above 300 of the Fabii were cut off in one day.

14. Xerxes, the son of Darius Hystaspis, heir to his father's crown and inveterate enmity to the Greeks, having built a bridge of boats over the Hellespont, and digged through Mount Athos, invaded Greece with an army of two millions of men. At the straits of Thermopylae, Leonidas, king of the Spartans, with a handful of men, made a dreadful slaughter of his troops, till, spent with killing, he fell victorious above heaps of slain enemies. The Athenians, in the mean time, quitting their city, equipped a fleet of 200 ships. Accordingly, Xerxes having found Athens deserted, burnt it. But his fleet, consisting of 2000 sail and upwards, being defeated near Salamis, and put to flight by the contrivance and valour of Themistocles, the Athenian admiral, he marched off in great dismay towards Thrace, in order to cross the Hellespont: but finding his bridge broken down by the violence of the storms, he passed over in a fishing boat, and continued his flight to Sardis in the year of Rome 268, and before Christ 480.

15. The year following, Mardonius, who had been left by Xerxes with 300 thousand men to prosecute the war, met with a mighty overthrow at Plataea from the Greeks, under the conduct of Aristides and Pausanias. In the reign of Xerxes, flourished Herodotus, the father of historians, about 600 years later than Homer.

16. Quinctius Cincinnatus, called from the plough by the Romans to the dictatorship, delivered the consul Minucius, who had been blocked up by the Aequi at Algidum, and

tus sum, Persicus bellum adjuvo, privatus injuria patria condonatus.

Roma Fabius gens, ut patria molestia libero, bellum sui Veientinus ipse posco. Veientes saepe vinco. Jam victrix ab hostis per insidiae pene deletus sum; amplius 300 Fabii unus dies cado.

Xerxes, Darius Hystaspis filius, paternus regnum atque odium in Graecus heres junctus navis Hellespontus, Athosque mons perfossus, Graecia cum 2000 armatus mille invado. Is Leonidas, rex Spartiates, parvus manus, ad Thermopylae angustiae, maximus infero clades, donec, caedendum defatigatio, super strages hostis corruo victor. Atheniensis interim, relictus urbs, classis 200 navis adorno. Xerxes igitur Athenae vacuus nactus, incendo. Sed classis duo mille navis, et amplius, Themistocles, dux Atheniensis, virtus et consilium prope Salamis fusus ac fugatus, trepidus Thracia versus discedo, ut Hellespontus trajicio: cum vero pons tempestas vis solutus video, scapha piscatorius transmitto, fugioque continuo Sardis, annus Roma 268, et ante Christus 480.

Sequens annus, Mardonius, qui cum 300 armatus mille a Xerxes ad persequendus bellum relictus sum, magnus ad Plataeae calamitas accipio a Graecus, Aristides et Pausanias dux. Xerxes rex, floreo historia pater Herodotus, annus prope 600 junior Homerus.

Quinctius Cincinnatus, ab aratrum ad dictatura a Romanus vocatus, Minucius consul ad Algidum obsessus ab Aequus libero, hostisque sub jugum

caused the enemy to pass under the yoke. Cimon also, the son of Miltiades, having with the like good conduct vanquished the forces of Xerxes near Cyprus, restored the Greek cities of Asia to liberty. Nor was Greece then illustrious for its generals only, but philosophers also; for the same age produced Heraclitus, Democritus, Anaxagoras, and several others.

17. At Rome, about 300 years after the building of the city, instead of two consuls, decemviri were created. They compiled a body of laws brought over from Greece, and particularly from Athens. These, being inscribed on 12 tables, were called the laws of the XII. tables. Within a few years, by the lust of Appius Claudius, and the outrages of his colleagues, the government reverted to the consuls.

18. Artaxerxes Longimanus granted leave to Nehemiah, his cup-bearer, to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem, in the year before the birth of Christ 445. In the reign of Artaxerxes, lived the famous naturalists Empedocles, and Parmenides, Hippocrates the physician, Polycletus and Phidias, statuaries, Xeuxis, Parrhasius, and Timantes, painters.

19. About six years after the decemviral power was abolished, military tribunes with consular authority began to be created at Rome. The censors too were then first made for holding the census. Cornelius Cossus, a military tribune, having slain Tolumnius king of the Veientes with his own hand, next after Romulus, presented the *spolia opima* to Jupiter Feretrius.

20. The same year that the military tribunes were created at Rome, the Peloponnesian war broke out in Greece, which spreading itself over all Greece, continued 27 years. Thucydides, having been forced into banishment by Pericles, the incendiary of the war, wrote the history of it.

21. A few years after, the seat of the war was transferred into Sicily. The Athenians, importuned for aid by the Catanenses, engaged in a war against the Syracusans, in the reign of

mitto. Cimon quoque, Miltiades filius, Xerxes copiae ad Cyprus par virtus devictus, Graecus Asia urbs in libertas assero. Nec vero imperator tum, sed etiam philosophus, Graecia floreo; idem enim aetas Heraclitus, Democritus. Anaxagorus, aliusque complures effundo.

Roma, annus post urbs conditus circiter 300, pro duo consul decemviri creatus. Hic lex e Graecia, ac potissimum Athenae, petitus, conscribo. Hic, quoniam tabula duodecim mandatus sum, lex XII. tabula appellatus. Pauci annus, propter Appius Claudius libido, collegaque impotentia, res ad consul redeo.

Artaxerxes Longimanus, Nehemias, pincerna suus, potestas murus, Hierosolyma reficiendum facio, annus ante Christus natus 445. Artaxerxes regnans, Empedocles et Parmenides physicus, Hippocrates medicus, Polycletus et Phidias, statuarius, Xeuxis, Parrhasius, et Timantes, pictor, clarus sum.

Sex fere annus post sublatus decemviri potestas, tribunus miles consularis potestas Roma creo coepi. Censor quoque tum primum ad census agendus creatus. Cornelius Cossus, tribunus miles, Tolumnius Veientes rex suus manus necatus, spolia opimus Jupiter Feretrius, alter ab Romulus, fero.

Idem annus qui tribunus miles Roma creatus sum, bellum Peloponnesiacus exardeo in Graecia, qui totus pervagatus Graecia, annus duro 27. Is bellum Thucydides, a Pericles, bellum excitator, in exilium ejectus, historia mando.

Pauci interjectus annus, bellum in Sicilia transeo. Atheniensis, Catanensis opis implorans, bellum adversus Syracusanus suscipio, Darius Nothus

Darius Nothus, king of the Persians. The first attempts of the Athenians in this war were very successful, but the issue proved fatal to them. The generals of the Athenians were Alcibiades, Nicias, and Lamachus.

22. But at Athens the study of the liberal arts was in high repute. Then flourished Aristophanes, Cratinus, and Eupolis, comic poets; Sophocles and Euripides, tragic poets; Praxiteles, the famous statuary; Gorgias and other sophists in great numbers; and Socrates, the father of philosophers. But Diagoras, denying the existence of the gods, was banished from Athens, a reward being offered by the government if any one would kill him.

23. The Galli Senones, during the reign of Tarquinius Priscus, having driven out the Tuscans, had seized upon that part of Italy which was afterwards called Cisalpine Gaul. This people, incensed by Q. Fabius, the ambassador of the Roman people, at the siege of Clusium, a town of the Hetrusci, turned their arms against the Romans, and, having cut off their forces at the river Allia, fell upon the city, under their leader Brennus, took and destroyed it with fire and sword. Rome was burnt in the year 365 after it was built.

24. About those times a calamity of much the like nature befel Athens. Lysander, general of the Lacedemonians, assisted by the power of Persia, having vanquished Conon, and brought the Athenians very low, took Athens itself, demolished its walls, and appointed thirty commissioners to govern the state; who, tyrannizing cruelly over the citizens, were turned out by Thrasybulus, four years after the taking of the city, and Athens restored to its liberty.

25. About the same time flourished Ctesias of Cnidus, who, having been taken prisoner in the wars of Cyrus against Artaxerxes Mnemon, king of the Persians, was very honourably treated by the king on account of his skill in physic, and wrote the history of the Persians. At the same time lived Archytas of Tarentum, and

rex Persa. Hic bellum praeclarus initium, exitus Atheniensis calamitosus sum. Dux Atheniensis sum Alcibiades, Nicias, et Lamachus.

Athenae autem bonus ars studium vigeo. Aristophanes, Cratinus et Eupolis, comicus poeta; Sophocles et Euripides, tragicus; Praxiteles statuarius insignis; Gorgias aliusque sophista quam plurimus; et Socrates, philosophus parens, tum floreo. Diagoras autem, deus sum negans, Athenae exulo, praemium publice propositus, si quis is occido.

Gallus Seno, Tarquinius Priscus regnans, Italia pars, qui Gallia Cisalpinus postea dictus sum, Thuscus expulsus, occupo. Hic, in oppugnatio Clusium, Hetruscus oppidum, a Q. Fabius legatus populus Romanus irritatus, in Romanus arma verto, is copiae ad Allia flumen caesus, urbs, Brennus dux, invado, captus ferrum flammaque populor. Roma incensus annus postquam conditus sum 365.

Consimilis per is tempus Athenae casus excipio. Lysander, Lacedaemonius dux, opes Persicus adjutus, cum, Conon victus, Atheniensis frango, ipse Athenae capio, murus diruo, et triginta vir respublica praepono; qui in civis crudeliter grassans, a Thrasybulus, quartus post urbs captus annus, ejectus sum, et libertas Athenae restitutus.

Sub idem tempus floreo Ctesias Cnidius, qui, bellum Cyrus contra Artaxerxes Mnemon, Persa rex, captus, propter medendum scientia, magnus in honor ab rex rum habitus, et Persa scribo historia. Idem tempestas Archytas Tarentinus, itemque Antisthenes, Aris-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

gious stature in the face of both armies, and was called Torquatus, from the chain which he took from the Gaul's neck. Valerius too killed a Gaul of like size, by the assistance of a raven, which perching on his helmet, had annoyed his antagonist with his wings and beak, and got the surname of Corvinus.

31. Alexander the Great was born at Pella, a town of Macedonia, in the year after the building of Rome 392, in the 106th Olympiad, and before the birth of Christ 356; his father Philip, king of the Macedonians, subdued the Illyrians, took several cities from the Athenians and other Greeks, and would have made himself master of all Greece, had he not been opposed by Demosthenes the orator. Finally, being created general of Greece, for managing the Persian war, he was slain by Pausanias, whose ill usage he had neglected to revenge, in the reign of Ochus, king of the Persians.

32. In the mean time, the war with the Samnites proved very grievous and lasting. War was declared against the Samnites in favour of the Campani, who had put themselves under the protection of the Roman people, and was carried on with various success. To it was added the war with the Latins; in which war, T. Manlius Torquatus, the consul, beheaded his own son, for engaging the enemy contrary to orders. In the same war Decius Mus, upon the Roman troops giving ground, devoted himself for the army. The ships of the Antiates taken during the war, were brought to Rome, and with their beaks the gallery in the Forum was adorned; whilst Diogenes the Cynic, and scholar of Antisthenes, also Aristotle, Xenocrates, Speusippus, disciples of Plato, taught in Greece.

33. Alexander the Great in his youth studied under Aristotle; while yet very young he conquered the Thracians and Illyrians, destroyed Thebes, and received Athens upon surrender. After this, supported by

citus, ex provocatio, occido, et ex torquis qui Gallus cervix detraho, Torquatus dictus sum: Valerius item Gallus par magnitudo obtrunco, corvus praesidium, qui in is galea insidens, hostis ala rostrumque terreo, et cognomen Corvinus adipiscor.

Annus post Roma conditus 392, Olympias 106, et ante Christus natus 356, in oppidum Macedonia Pella, Alexander Magnus natus sum; qui pater Philippus, rex Macedo, Illyrius subigo, multus de Atheniensis aliusque Graecus urbs capio, totusque Graecia potitus sum, nisi Demosthenes orator adversarius habeo. Denique, ad bellum Persicus administrandus Graecia dux creatus, a Pausanias, qui injuria vindico negligo, interficio, Ochus rex Persa.

Samniticus, interim, bellum existo sane gravis ac diuturnus. Pro Campanus, qui sui in fides populus Romanus trado, bellum Samnis indictus, ac varie gestus sum. Latinus bellum accedo; qui bellum, T. Manlius Torquatus, consul, filius, quod contra edictum cum hostis pugno, securis percutio. Idem bellum Decius Mus, inclinatus acies Romanus, sui pro exercitus devoveo. Navis Antiates bellum captus, Roma subductus sum, atque is rostrum suggestum in Forum extructus adorno; Diogenes Cynicus, Antisthenes, Aristoteles, Xenocrates, Speusippus, Plato auditor, docens in Graecia.

Alexander Magnus puer Aristoteles opera do; adolescentulus Illyricus Thraxque perdomo, Thebae everto, Athenae in deditio accipio. Inde, junctus Thessalus Grae-

the confederate arms of the Greeks and Thessalians, he passes over into Asia to the Persian war. He defeats Darus Codomannus, king of the Persians, first at Granicus, and a second time at Issus.

cusque arma adjutus, ad Persicus bellum in Asia trajicio. Darius Codomannus, Persa rex, primo ad Granicus, iterum ad Issus supero.

34. Moreover, Alexander having taken Tyre, invaded Judea. But being received in a friendly manner at Jerusalem by Jaddus the high priest, he offered sacrifices in the temple. Having made himself master of Egypt, he builds the city of Alexandria, calling it by his own name. In fine, he passes the Euphrates, conquers Darius a third time at Arbela, and having taken Babylon, transfers the empire from the Persians to the Macedonians, in the fourth year of his reign, in the 112th Olympiad, in the year of Rome 418, and before Christ 330.

Alexander, porro, captus Tyrus, Judaea invado. Sed Hierosolyma ab Jaddus summus sacerdos amice acceptus, in templum victima immolo. Aegyptus potitus, Alexandria urbs a sui conditus, ex suus nomen appello. Denique Euphrates transeo, Darius tertio ad Arbela vinco, et, Babylon captus, imperium a Persa ad Macedo traduco, annus regnum quartus, Olympias 112, annus Roma 418, et ante Christus 330.

## CHAP. IX.

*From the overthrow of the Persian empire to the defeat of Perseus, the last successor of Alexander the Great in Greece, by Aemilius Paulus, when Rome became the mistress of the world; comprehending* 163 *years.*

THE Macedonian empire being thus erected, Alexander marches into India, and, after conquering many nations, returns to Babylon; where he died, in the 12th year of his reign, being 33 years old, in the year before the birth of Christ 323. In his reign flourished the historians Theopompus, Megasthenes, and Hecataeus.

MACEDONICUS imperium ita constitutus, Alexander in India pergo, et, multus natio devictus, Babylon revertor; ubi, annus 33 natus, excedo e vita, annus regnum 12, et ante Christus natus 323. Is regnans, Theopompus, Megasthenes, et Hecataeus, historicus, floreo.

2. Upon the demise of Alexander, many princes started up in the room of one. Ptolemy, the son of Lagus, called also Ptolemy Soter, reigned in Egypt, Eumenes in Cappadocia, Antigonus in Asia, Lysimachus in Thrace, Seleucus at Babylon. Cassander having put to death Alexander's son, and his mother Olympias, seized upon the kingdom of Macedonia. At the same time Menander, the comic poet, Crantor, the disciple of Xenocrates, and Crates of Diogenes, Epicurus, and Zeno, the father of the Stoics, as also Theophrastus, were in great reputa ion.

Alexander mortuus, multus pro unus rex existo. Ptolemaeus, Lagus filius, Ptolemaeus Soter etiam dictus, in Aegyptus, Eumenes in Cappadocia, Antigonus in Asia, Lysimachus in Thracia, Seleucus Babylon, regno. Cassander, Alexander filius ac mater Olympias interfectus, regnum Macedonia occupo. Idem tempestas, Menander, comicus poeta, Crantor Xenocrates, et Crates Diogenes discipulus, Epicurus, et Zeno, Stoicus parens, itemque Theophrastus, nomen habeo.

3. About the time of Alexander's death, Appius Claudius, the censor, paved the Appian way at Rome. About the same time the Tarentine war was kindled up, occasioned by their insulting the Roman ambassadors. In which war the integrity and courage of Curius and Fabricius, with respect to Pyrrhus king of Epire, who had come to the assistance of the Tarentines, were remarkably eminent. Curius Dentatus having defeated him in battle, drove him at last out of Italy, and forced the Tarentines to surrender, about 483 years after the building of the city.

Roma, sub Alexander mors, Appius Claudius, censor, Appius via sterno. Sub idem tempus bellum Tarentinus, ob legatus populus Romanus violatus, excitatus sum. Qui bellum adversus Pyrrhus, Epirus rex, qui Tarentinus auxilium venio, Curius et Fabricius integritas ac virtus eniteo Curius Dentatus denique, Pyrrhus devictus, Italia expello, et Tarentinus ad deditio compello, annus ab urbs conditus circiter 483.

4. After the death of Alexander the Great, the regal government continued in Egypt for the space of near 275 years. Ptolemy Soter, the beginning of whose reign is to be computed from the year before Christ 304, for the successors of Alexander long disclaimed the title of king, ruled 20 years, Ptolemy Philadelphus 38, Ptolemy Euergetes 25, Ptolemy Philopater 17, Ptolemy Epiphanes 24, Ptolemy Philometor 35, Ptolemy Physcon 29, Ptolemy Lathurnus or Soter 36, Alexander 15, Ptolemy Auletes 14, Queen Cleopatra 22.

Post mors Alexander Magnus, per spatium fere 275 annus in Egyptus regnatur. Ptolemaeus Soter, qui regnum initium ab annus ante Christus 304 supputandus sum, Alexander enim successor a nomen rex diu abstineo, annus 20 impero, Ptolemaeus Philadelphus 38, Ptolemaeus Euergetes 25, Ptolemaeus Philopater 17, Ptolemaeus Epiphanes 24, Ptolemaeus Philometor 35, Ptolemaeus Physcon 29, Ptolemaeus Lathurnus sive Soter 36, Alexander 15, Ptolemaeus Auletes 14, Cleopatra regina 22.

5. Agathocles, the tyrant of Syracuse, besieged by the Carthaginians, passes over privately with his fleet into Africa; by which means he drew off the enemy to the defence of their own country. Having made peace with the Carthaginians, he makes himself absolute master of Sicily. He was succeeded by Hiero, who, for his great moderation, was honoured with the title of king by the Syracusans. He gave occasion to the first Punic war with the Romans.

Agathocles, Syracusae tyrannus, a Poenus obsessus, occulte cum classis trajicio in Africa; ita hostis ad defendendus patria avoco. Pax cum Carthaginensis factus, Sicilia imperium potior. Hic Hiero succedo, qui, propter summus moderatio, rex a Syracusanus appellatus sum. Hic primus bellum Punicus occasio Romanus do.

6. About 495 years after the building of the city, the Roman people having subdued almost all Italy, passed over into Sicily, to succour the Mamertini their allies, against Hiero and the Carthaginians. Accord-

Populus Romanus, annus, post urbs conditus, circiter 495, domitus totus paene Italia, ut Mamertinus socius contra Hiero et Carthaginensis auxilium fero, transmitto in

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

from him the other kings of the Parthians were called Arsacidae.

8. The tranquillity of Rome, after the first Punic war, lasted scarce 24 years. Saguntum, a city in Spain, in alliance with the Roman people, having been destroyed by Annibal the Carthaginian general, gave rise to the second Punic war. Annibal leaving his brother Asdrubal in Spain, marches over the Alps into Italy. Cornelius Scipio meets him at Ticinum; but narrowly escaped himself, with the loss of his army. Flaminius, with a more terrible stroke, is cut off with his army by Annibal at the lake Thrasymene. Q. Fabius Maximus checked the enemy's career a little by waving battle; hence he was called Cunctator. But a signal overthrow was received at Cannae, a village of Apulia, by the rashness of Terentius Varro. So great was the number of the slain, that a bushel of gold rings, which had been taken from the hands of the Roman knights, was sent to Carthage. But the following year, M. Claudius Marcellus, fighting a successful battle at Nola, made it appear that Annibal could be conquered.

9. Hieronymus, the son of Hiero, king of Syracuse, had revolted to Annibal. Whereupon the consul Marcellus made war upon the Syracusans, and takes the city of Syracuse by surprise in the night, which had been long defended, no less by the inventions of Archimedes, than the arms of the citizens. The moderation of the conqueror heightened the glory of the conquest. He spared the city and the inhabitants. In fine, Laevinus made Sicily the first province of the Roman people.

10. Cornelius Scipio, yet very young, is sent into Spain by the Romans. He takes New Carthage, and drives Asdrubal out of Spain. There too he struck up a league with Masinissa. But Claudius Nero cut off Asdrubal at the river Metaurus, as he was going into Italy to join forces with his brother Annibal. And Scipio passed over into Africa, on

no Arsaces; unde caeter Parthus rex Arsacidae dictus.

Roma, post primus bellum Punicus, vix 24 annus requies. Saguntum, urbs in Hispania, amicus populus Romanus, ab Annibal, Poenus dux, deletus, secundus bellum Punicus principium sum. Annibal, Asdrubal frater in Hispania relictus, per Alpes in Italia descendo. Is Cornelius Scipio ad Ticinum occurro; sed, amissus exercitus, ipse aegre evado. Flaminius deterior exitus ab Annibal ad lacus Thrasymenus cum exercitus caedo. Q. Fabius Maximus hostis cunctandum nonnihil reprimo; unde ipse Cunctator dictus sum. Sed Terentius Varro temeritas insignis ad Cannae, Apulia vicus, clades acceptus. Caesus multitudo tantus sum, ut aureus annulus, qui Romanus eques manus detractus sum, modius Carthago mitto. At annus sequens, M. Claudius Marcellus, ad Nola secundus praelium factus, doceo Annibal possum supero.

Hieronymus, Hiero filius, Syracusae rex, ad Annibal descisco. Quare Marcellus consul Syracusanus bellum infero, urbs Syracusae, non minus Archimedes ingenium, quam civis arma, diu defensus, noctu de improviso capio. Victoria gloria augeo moderatio victor. Urbs et civis parco. Laevinus denique Sicilia primus populus Romanus provincia facio.

Cornelius Scipio, adhuc adolescentulus, a Romanus in Hispania mitto. Is Carthago Novus capio, et Asdrubal ex Hispania fugo. Foedus quoque ibi cum Masinissa ferio. At Claudius Nero Asdrubal, in Italia ad conjungendus cum frater Annibal copiae veniens, ad Metaurus flumen, opprimo.

design to draw off the enemy, who still kept fast by Italy. He cuts off Hanno the general of the Carthaginians with his army, and having conquered Syphax their ally in battle, took him prisoner.

11. In the 16th year of the war, Annibal was recalled into Africa, by the Carthaginians. He encounters Scipio; being defeated, makes his escape from the battle, and giving up all for lost, flies into Asia. Carthage was entirely subdued in the year of Rome 560, just 188 years before the birth of Christ.

12. From Africa, Scipio got the surname of Africanus, being the first that was dignified with the name of a vanquished nation. He greatly honoured Ennius the epic poet, with whom the comedians Naevius, Caecilius, Plautus, are reckoned nearly contemporary.

13. The peace with Carthage was succeeded by the Macedonian war, which was undertaken for the Athenians their allies, and carried on with various success for ten years. At last this war was ended by Quinctius Flaminius, by the entire conquest of Philip king of Macedonia, and liberty restored to all Greece, in the year of the city 552.

14. After this Antiochus, king of Syria and Asia, made war upon the Romans, at the instigation of Annibal. But Antiochus being defeated both by sea and land, by L. Scipio, sued for peace; which was granted him on these terms: That he should quit all Asia, and surrender up Annibal; who, to prevent his falling into the hands of his enemies, swallowed poison, and died, in the year of the city 581. From Asia L. Scipio received the surname of Asiaticus. In those times Livy the writer of tragedies was accounted famous.

15. About the same time, M. Fulvius having taken Ambracia, the residence of Pyrrhus king of the Epirots, conquered the Aetolians; L. Posthumius Albinus subdued the Lusitani, Appius Pulcher the Istri; Aemilius Paulus reduced Perseus king

Scipio autem, ut haerens Italia hostis abstraho, transmitto in Africa. Hanno Poenus dux cum exercitus caedo; Syphax is socius, acies victus, capio.

Annibal a Carthaginiensis, annus bellum 16, in Africa revoco. Signum cum Scipio confero; victus, e praelium fugio; res desperatus, in Asia profugio. Carthago penitus subactus annus post Roma conditus 560, ante Christus natus omnino 188.

Scipio, ex Africa, Africanus cognomen deporto, primus nomen devictus a sui gens nobilitatus. Idem Ennius poeta epicus in honor habeo, qui Naevius, Caecilius, Plautus, comicus, fere aequalis numero.

Pax Punicus bellum Macedonicus excipio, qui pro Atheniensis amicus susceptus, per decem annus varie gero. Denique a Quinctius Flaminius Philippus Macedonia rex debellatus, hic bellum confectus sum, et Graecia universus libertas restitutus, annus ab urbs conditus 552.

Antiochus deinde, rex Asia ac Syria, Annibal impulsus, bellum Romanus infero. Verum a Lucius Scipio terra mareque Antiochus superatus, pax peto; qui hic conditio datus: Ut Asia excedo, et Annibal dedo; qui, ne in hostis potestas venio, haustus venenum intereo, annus urbs 581. L. Scipio ex Asia cognomen Asiaticus refero. Hic tempus Livius tragoedia scriptor clarus habeo.

Sub idem tempus M. Fulvius, captus Ambracia, Pyrrhus rex Epirota sedes, Aetolus domo; L. Posthumius Albinus Lusitanus, Appius Pulcher Ister subigo; Aemilius Paulus, Perseus Macedonia rex,

of Macedon, the last successor of Alexander the Great in Greece, and led him in triumph to Rome, in the year of the city 581, and before Christ 167. Rome now began to be accounted the mistress of the world.

16. Much about the same time bloody wars were carried on in Judea by the Maccabees, against Antiochus and Demetrius, with various success.

ultimus in Graecia Alexander Magnus successor, debello, atque in triumphus Roma duco, annus urbs 581, et ante Christus 167. Roma jam terra orbis domina habeo coepi.

Idem fere tempus, atrox bellum in Judaea, a Maccabaeus, contra Antiochus et Demetrius, varie gestus sum.

## CHAP. X.

*From the defeat of Perseus to the birth of Christ, or the beginning of the Christian era; including* 167 *years.*

THE Carthaginians, disregarding treaties, and making war upon Masinissa, gave occasion to the third Punic war. Wherefore, by the persuasion of M. Cato, a war is commenced against them. At last, being quite vanquished, in the fourth year of it, by P. Scipio, they surrendered themselves at discretion. Carthage was levelled with the ground, after it had stood above 700 years, in the year from the building of Rome 602. The same Scipio made Panaetius the philosopher, Polybius the historian, Terence the comic poet, his intimate friends. These gentlemen in their old age were succeeded by Pacuvius and Accius, tragic poets, and Aristarchus the grammarian.

CARTHAGINIENSIS, neglectus foedus, bellumque Masinissa illatus, tertius bellum Punicus occasio do. Itaque is, suasor M. Cato, bellum infero. Quartus demum annus a P. Scipio debellatus, deditio facio. Carthago solum aequo, cum jam sto annus amplius septingenti, annus a Roma conditus 602. Idem Scipio Panaetius philosophus, Polybius historicus, Terentius comicus poeta, familiaris habeo. Hic senex succedo Pacuvius et Accius, tragicus poeta, et Aristarchus grammaticus.

2. About these times the Corinthians had beaten the ambassadors of the Roman people, and engaged the Achaeans to join them as confederates in the war. Whereupon L. Mummius the consul, having received Achaia upon surrender, destroyed Corinth, after it had stood 952 years, in the year of Rome 602. About the same time Q. Fabius in a great measure recovered Lusitania, which had been seized upon by Viriatus the robber. P. Scipio too, 14 years after the destruction of Carthage, razed Numantia in Spain, with the same army which had before been often routed by the Numantians. Of such importance was a general and discipline.

Corinthus sub is tempus legatus populus Romanus pulso, et Achaeus sui bellum socius adjungo. Itaque L. Mummius consul, Achaia in deditio acceptus, Corinthus, cum jam annus 952 sto, deleo, annus Roma 602. Per idem tempus Q. Fabius Lusitania, a Viriatus latro occupatus, magnus ex pars recipio. P. Scipio quoque, decimus quartus annus post Carthago eversus, Numantia in Hispania everto, idem exercitus qui a Numantinus saepius fugatus antea sum. Tantum valeo dux et disciplina.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

same thing with a greater power, was assassinated at his own house.

7. After this the social war was lighted up in Italy. The Marsi, Picentes, Peligni, Samnites, Lucani, and other nations of Italy, finding they could not obtain the freedom of the city by gentle methods, endeavoured to compass it by force of arms. At last being conquered by Cn. Pompey, and other commanders, they sued for peace. Together with the peace, the freedom of the city was spontaneously conferred on them. About the same time, Aristobulus, the high priest, received the ensigns of royalty, in Judea, almost 482 years after Zedekiah the last king of Judea.

Socialis deinde bellum ardeo coepi Italia. Marsi, Picentes, Peligni, Samnites, Lucani, aliusque populus Italia, cum civitas impetro non possum, arma extorqueo tento. Denique a Cn. Pompeius aliusque imperator domitus, pax peto. Civitas ultro cum pax datus. In Judaea per idem tempus Aristobulus, pontifex maximus, regius insigne accipio, annus post Zedechias, ultimus Judaea rex, prope 482.

8. Mithridates, king of Pontus, had dispossessed Ariobarzanes, king of Cappadocia, and Nicomedes king of Bithynia, allies of the Roman people, of their respective kingdoms. War was declared against him under the conduct of L. Sylla. Upon this a civil war was kindled up in Italy: C. Marius, envying Sylla, his old lieutenant, so large a field of glory, brought it about by means of Sulpitius, a tribune of the people, that the management of the war was committed to himself. Upon this head, Marius being forced from the city by Sylla, withdrew into Africa. Sylla, marching into Asia, fought with great success against Mithridates. He recovered Bithynia, Cappadocia, and Asia, in the year of the city 663.

Mithridates, rex Pontus, Ariobarzanes Cappadocia, et Nicomedes Bithynia, rex, amicus populus Romanus, regnum suus exturbo. Is bellum indictus, dux L. Sylla. Ex is civilis bellum in Italia excitatus sum: C. Marius, tantus gloria seges Sylla, legatus olim suus, invidens, ago per Sulpitius, tribunus plebs, ut is bellum sui mando. Is ob res Marius urbs pulsus a Sylla, secedo in Africa. Sylla in Asia profectus adversus Mithridates, bene pugno. Bithynia, Cappadocia, Asia, recipio, annus urbs 663.

9. Marius, in the mean time, by the assistance of L. Cinna the consul, breaks into Rome with an army. Sylla brings over his victorious forces out of Asia, and having vanquished Marius' party, fills the city and Italy with slaughter and bloodshed, the proscription of citizens being then first set on foot. Sylla, about four years after, consumed of the lousy disease, died in the year of the city 671.

Interea, Marius, L. Cinna consul adjuvans, Roma cum copiae irrumpo. Sylla victor exercitus ex Asia transporto, et profligatus Marianus pars, urbs et Italia strages compleo, proscriptio civis tum primum inductus. Sylla, quatuor exinde circiter annus, pedicularis morbus confectus, intereo, annus urbs 671.

10. Sertorius, a general of the Marian faction, had seized upon Spain, and concluded an alliance with Mi-

Sertorius, Marianus pars dux, Hispania occupo, societasque cum Mithridates coeo.

thridates. Q. Metellus and Cn. Pompey waged war against him with various success. At last Sertorius being murdered by his own men, Spain was recovered, in the year of the city 675.

Contra hic Q. Metellus et Cn. Pompeius varius eventus pugno. Sertorius demum a suus occisus, Hispania recipio, annus urbs 675.

11. At the same time slaves and pirates raised disturbances. One Spartacus, with above 70 gladiators, having made his escape from a fencing school at Capua, and drawn together a numerous body of forces, routed the Roman armies several times. At last he was cut off by M. Crassus. And Cn. Pompey, afterwards called Pompey the Great, subdued the pirates, who, at the instigation of Mithridates, infested the seas, in the year of the city 682.

Servus ac pirata idem tempestas turba commoveo. Spartacus, cum amplius 70 gladiator, Capua ludus elapsus, magnus copiae contractus, Romanus exercitus non semel fundo. Ad extremum a M. Crassus opprimo. Pirata quoque, qui a Mithridates solicitatus mare infesto, Cn. Pompeius, postea Pompeius Magnus dictus, perdomo, annus urbs 682.

12. Mithridates having been reinforced with fresh succours, renewed the war in Asia. Lucullus, after he had brought him very low by several battles, hemmed him in within Pontus. At the same time Metellus, having reduced the island of Crete under the dominion of the Roman people, was named Creticus. After this Cn. Pompey stripped Mithridates of his kingdom; and admitted Tigranes, his confederate in the war, to a surrender; taking from him Syria and Phoenicia. He reduced Pontus into the form of a province, in the year of the city 684.

Mithridates novus copiae instructus, bellum in Asia renovo. Is Lucullus, multus praelium fractus, in Pontus compello. Idem tempus Metellus, Creta insula in ditio populus Romanus redactus, Creticus appellatus sum. Cn. inde Pompeius Mithridates regnum spolio; Tigranes, bellum socius, in deditio accipio; isque Syria ac Phoenice adimo. Pontus in provincia forma redigo, annus urbs 684.

13. Aristobulus and Hyrcanus, the sons of Alexander, king of the Jews, disputing about the succession to the crown, Pompey came into Judea in the character of an umpire, to decide their differences; but being provoked by Aristobulus, he takes Jerusalem by storm, demolishes the walls, enters the holy recesses of the temple, but meddles with nothing sacred. He made Judea tributary to the Roman people, and carried Aristobulus with him to Rome, in the year before Christ 63.

Pompeius, Aristobulus et Hyrcanus, Alexander, rex Judaeus, filius, de regnum dissidens, in Judaea ad is controversia tollendus arbiter venio: sed ab Aristobulus irritatus, Hierosolyma vis capio, murus diruo, in templum adytum ingressus, sacer nihil attingo. Judaea stipendiarius populus Romanus facio, Aristobulus sui cum Roma duco, annus ante Christus 63.

14. Whilst the Roman empire was extending itself over all Asia, Rome itself was well nigh ruined by an intestine war. L. Catiline, having raised an army in Etruria, had enter-

Dum imperium Romanus totus Asia propago, Roma ipse intestinus bellum paene deletus sum. L. Catilina, exercitus in Etruria comparatus, cum

ed into a conspiracy with Lentulus, the praetor, Cethegus, and other senators, to massacre the consuls and the senate, and set fire to the city. This conspiracy was discovered and crushed by M. Tullius Cicero, the consul, and Catiline cut off with his army by C. Antonius, in the year of the city 686. Cicero three years after was forced into banishment by P. Clodius, for having put to death the conspirators. But within 16 months, he was recalled with great glory. The same man was highly illustrious for his eloquence; whilst M. Varro the philologist, Sallust the historian, Lucretius and Catullus, poets, were much esteemed at Rome. Caesar Augustus was likewise born this year.

Lentulus, praetor, Cethegus, aliusque senator, de caedes consul ac senatus, deque inflammandus urbs, conjuro. Is conjuratio a M. Tullius Cicero, consul, patefactus et oppressus sum, Catilina a C. Antonius cum exercitus caesus, annus urbs 686. Cicero triennium post a P. Clodius, ob supplicium conjuratus, ejicio in exilium. Sed mensis 16 summus cum gloria reduco. Idem eloquentia gloria floreo; cum M. Varro, philologus, Sallustius, historicus, Lucretius et Catullus, poeta, Roma in honor sum. Hic quoque annus Caesar Augustus natus sum.

15. About the same time C. Julius Caesar attached Cn. Pompey to his interest by marriage, having taken to wife his daughter Julia. He won over M. Crassus to himself and to Pompey. A combination of three leading men being thus formed, the province of Gaul is decreed to Caesar, Spain to Pompey, and the management of the Parthian war committed to Crassus.

Sub idem tempus C. Julius Caesar, Cn. Pompeius, Julia filia in matrimonium acceptus, affinitas sui devincio. M. Crassus, et Pompeius, et sui concilio. Tres princeps conspiratio sic factus, Caesar Gallia, Pompeius Hispania decerno, Crassus bellum Parthicus mando.

16. Crassus marching into Asia, plundered the temple of Jerusalem of its sacred treasure, fought the Parthians to great disadvantage, and lost his army, together with his son. At last he himself being trapanned under pretence of an interview, is slain by the enemy.

Crassus in Asia profectus, templum Hierosolymitanus sacer pecunia spolio, adversus Parthus male pugno, exercitus cum filius amitto. Demum ipse, per species colloquium, ab hostis circumventus, occido.

17. But Caesar constrained the Helvetii to return to their country; overthrew Ariovistus, king of the Germans, the disturber of Gaul; subdued the Aquitani, Gauls, and Belgae; and conquered Germany and Britain. Meanwhile his wife Julia dying, Caesar's power appeared to Pompey and the senate exorbitant, and dangerous to the state; wherefore he is ordered to disband his army. From those beginnings broke out the civil war, about 699 years after the building of the city.

Caesar autem Helvetius in patria suus compello; Ariovistus, Germanus rex, vexator Gallia, profligo; Aquitanus, Gallus, et Belga subigo; Germania quoque et Britannia domo. Uxor Julia interim mortuus, Caesar potentia nimius et periculosus respublica, Pompeius et senatus visus sum; itaque exercitus demitto jubeo. Ex hicce initium coortus sum bellum civilis, annus post urbs conditus circiter 699.

18. Caesar marches with an hos-

Caesar infestus Roma ag-

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

to a general action, overthrows the Pompeys at Munda, a city of Spain. Cneius was slain in a tower to which he had fled.

do, acies decerno, Pompeius ad Munda, Hispania urbs, vinco. Cneius in turris, quo confugio, occido.

22. The republican government being thus subverted, Caesar was declared perpetual dictator by the senate. He reformed the year by intercalary days, according to the judgment of astronomers, and called the month Quintilis, from his own name, July. After this, being elated with pride, he began to slight the senate, and aspire to sovereign power. Wherefore, in the fifth year of his dictatorship, he was slain in the senate-house by Brutus, Cassius, and the other conspirators, being despatched by three and twenty wounds, in the year of the city 706, and before Christ 42.

Respublica sic oppressus, Caesar dictator perpetuus a senatus decretus sum. Annus de mathematicus sententia, intercalatus dies, corrigo, et Quintilis mensis suus nomen Julius appello. Proinde insolentia elatus, senatus contemno, ac regnum affecto, coepi. Ergo quintus dictatura annus, a Brutus, Cassius, caeterque conjuratus, in curia 23 vulnus confectus, intereo, annus urbs 706, et ante Christus 42.

23. M. Anthony the consul, stirring up the people, at Caesar's funeral, against the deliverers of their country, threw all into confusion; he overawed the senate by an armed force, and seized upon Cisalpine Gaul: whereupon war is resolved on against him by the senate, at the persuasion of Cicero. The consuls Hirtius and Pansa, as likewise Octavius, Julius Caesar's heir, and his sister's grandson, advanced to Mutina, at the head of three armies, and coming to an engagement with Anthony, obtained the victory.

M. Antonius consul, in funus Caesar, plebs in patria liberator concitatus, turbo omnis; arma senatus opprimo Gallia Cisalpinus invado. Itaque bellum contra is a senatus Cicero auctor, decerno. Hirtius et Pansa consul, itemque Octavius, Julius Caesar soror nepos, ac heres, cum tres exercitus ad Mutina proficiscor et signum cum Antonius collatus, victoria refero.

24. That victory cost the Roman people dear. The consuls being slain, the three armies subjected themselves to the command of Octavius alone; who marching his forces to Rome, procured himself the consulate from the senate by main force, being a youth about 20 years of age. Anthony mean time had fled into Transalpine Gaul, to M. Lepidus, master of the horse, and clapped up a treaty with him. Octavius, created commander-in-chief by the senate in the war against Anthony and Lepidus, betrays his trust, and enters into an association with both.

Magnum is victoria populus Romanus sto. Consul occisus, exercitus tres unus Octavius pareo; qui, copiae Roma adductus, consulatus a senatus, adolescens annus 20 natus, extorqueo. Antonius interim, in Gallia Transalpinus, ad M Lepidus, magister eques, confugio, et cum is societas ineo Octavius, bellum contra Antonius et Lepidus a senatus praepositus, fides prodo, amicitia que cum uterque jungo.

25. Accordingly, the triumvirate being formed, 130 senators were pro-

Triumviratus igitur institutus, 130 senator a triumviri

scribed by the triumviri; in the number of whom was Cicero. By these three men too, the globe of the earth was divided, as if it had been their patrimonial estate. The East and Greece fell to Anthony, Africa to Lepidus, Italy and the West to Octavius. Sicily was allotted to Sextus Pompey, who was master of a very powerful fleet; then flourished Diodorus Siculus the historian.

proscriptus; ex qui numerus Cicero sum. Orbis terra, quasi patrimonium, a triumviri quoque divisus. Oriens et Graecia Antonius, Africa Lepidus, Italia et Occidens Octavius, obvenio. Sextus Pompeius, qui classis plurimum valeo, Sicilia assignatus sum; Diodorus Siculus historicus tum vigens.

26. Octavius having been adopted into the family of Caesar, was called Caesar Octavianus. Octavianus and Anthony now publicly declaring themselves the avengers of Caesar the dictator, began to levy war against M. Brutus and C. Cassius. A battle was fought at Philippi, a city of Thessaly. Brutus and Cassius being defeated, laid violent hands on themselves. Sextus Pompey, warring against Octavianus, was vanquished in a sea-fight by his admiral M. Agrippa, and fled into Asia, where he died soon after, in the reign of Herod, king of Judea.

Octavius in familia Caesar adoptatus, Caesar Octavianus dictus sum. Octavianus et Antonius sui Caesar dictator ultor nunc profitens, M. Brutus et C. Cassius bellum persequor coepi. Ad Philippi, Thessalia urbs, pugnatur. Brutus et Cassius victus, manus sui affero. Sextus Pompeius cum Octavianus contendens, a M. Agrippa, is dux, navalis praelium superatus, in Asia profugio, ubi paulo post mors obeo, Herodes rex Judaea.

27. Anthony having divorced Octavia, the sister of Caesar Octavianus, had married Cleopatra, queen of Egypt; and, in order to make her mistress of the world, made war upon Octavianus: a naval engagement ensuing at Actium, Octavianus gained the victory, and pursuing the enemy, laid siege to Alexandria. Anthony, thinking his affairs desperate, despatches himself; Cleopatra, imitating him, died by the poison of an asp, in the year of the city 719.

Antonius, Octavia Caesar Octavianus soror repudiatus, Cleopatra, Aegyptus regina, in matrimonium duco; qui, ut orbis terra domina constituo, Octavianus bellum infero: commissus apud Actium praelium navalis, Octavianus victoria pario, et, hostis insecutus, Alexandria obsideo. Antonius, res desperatus, sui manus affero; is imitatus Cleopatra, aspis venenum intereo, annus urbs 719.

28. Caesar Octavianus, in the 12th year after the triumvirate was set on foot, being now lord of the world, had the title of Augustus bestowed on him by the senate. He gave his name to the month of August, which before was called Sextilis. Having procured peace by sea and land, he shut the temple of Janus for the third time. He had an affectionate regard for the poets Virgil and Horace; shewed a great esteem for the historians T. Livy and Strabo. He banished Ovid into Pontus. Their

Caesar Octavianus, annus post triumviratus institutus 12, res potitus, Augustus a senatus appellatus sum. Augustus mensis, qui antea Sextilis dico, nomen do. Pax terra mareque partus, Janus tertio claudo. Virgilius et Horatius, poeta, complexus sum; T. Livius et Strabo, historicus, in honor habeo. Ovidius in Pontus relego. Hic aequalis Q. Curtius, historicus, Tibullus ac Propertius, poeta, sum. Caesar Au-

contemporaries were Quintus Curtius the historian, Tibullus and Propertius poets. Caesar Augustus reigned 12 years in conjunction with the triumviri, and 44 alone. He died at Nola, in the 76th year of his age, and of the city 762; leaving Rome, as he himself boasted, reared of marble instead of bricks.

gustus annus regno cum triumviri 12, solus 44. Mors obeo Nola, annus aetas 76, et urbs 762; Roma, ut ipse glorior, e lateritius marmoreus relinquens.

29. In the year of the world 4004, in the year of Rome 748, in the 194th Olympiad, and 14 years before the death of Augustus, JESUS CHRIST, the eternal Son of God, was born of the Virgin Mary, sent from heaven to expiate the divine wrath; who, at 33 years of age, being crucified by the Jews, made an atonement for the sins of men with his own blood, in the 19th year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar.

Annus mundus 4004, annus Roma 748, Olympias 194, et annus ante excessus Augustus 14, JESUS CHRISTUS, aeternus Deus Filius, e Maria Virgo editus sum, e coelum missus piaculum coelestis ira; qui, 33 annus natus, a Judaeus in crux actus, suus sanguis scelus humanus luo, annus imperium Tiberius Caesar 19.

THE END.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

DODD'S LECTURES.

# DISCOURSES TO YOUNG MEN.

ILLUSTRATED BY NUMEROUS HIGHLY INTERESTING ANECDOTES.

BY WILLIAM DODD, LL. D.

CHAPLAIN IN ORDINARY TO HIS MAJESTY, GEORGE THE THIRD.

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION, WITH ENGRAVINGS.

One volume, 18mo.

# THE IRIS:

AN ORIGINAL SOUVENIR.

WITH CONTRIBUTIONS FROM THE FIRST WRITERS IN THE COUNTRY.

EDITED BY PROF. JOHN S. HART.

With splendid Illuminations and Steel Engravings. Bound in Turkey Morocco and rich Papier Mache Binding.

IN ONE VOLUME, OCTAVO.

# BRUSHWOOD PICKED UP ON THE CONTINENT,

OR,

# LAST SUMMER'S TRIP TO THE OLD WORLD.

BY ORVILLE HORWITZ.

IN ONE VOLUME, DUODECIMO. $1.

# LONZ POWERS; OR, THE REGULATORS.

A ROMANCE OF KENTUCKY.

FOUNDED ON FACTS.

BY JAMES WEIR, ESQ.

One vol. 12mo. Price $1 00.

# A MANUAL OF POLITENESS,

COMPRISING

THE PRINCIPLES OF ETIQUETTE AND RULES OF BEHAVIOUR

IN GENTEEL SOCIETY, FOR PERSONS OF BOTH SEXES.

18mo., with Plates.

SAY'S POLITICAL ECONOMY.

# A TREATISE ON POLITICAL ECONOMY;

## Or, The Production, Distribution and Consumption of Wealth.

BY JEAN BAPTISTE SAY.

FIFTH AMERICAN EDITION, WITH ADDITIONAL NOTES.

BY C. C. BIDDLE, Esq.

In one volume, octavo.

A BEAUTIFUL AND VALUABLE PRESENTATION BOOK.

# THE POET'S OFFERING.

EDITED BY MRS. HALE.

With a Portrait of the Editress, a Splendid Illuminated Title-Page, and Twelve Beautiful Engravings by Sartain. Bound in rich Turkey Morocco, and Extra Cloth, Gilt Edge.

# A Dictionary of Select and Popular Quotations,

WHICH ARE IN DAILY USE.

TAKEN FROM THE LATIN, FRENCH, GREEK, SPANISH AND ITALIAN LANGUAGES.

Together with a copious Collection of Law Maxims and Law Terms, translated into English, with Illustrations, Historical and Idiomatic.

NEW AMERICAN EDITION, CORRECTED, WITH ADDITIONS.

*In one volume, 12mo.*

# The City Merchant; or, The Mysterious Failure.

BY J. B. JONES,

Author of "Wild Western Scenes," "The Western Merchant," &c.

ILLUSTRATED WITH TEN ENGRAVINGS.

In one volume, 12mo.

# LAURENCE STERNE'S WORKS,

## WITH A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR:

WRITTEN BY HIMSELF.

WITH SEVEN BEAUTIFUL ILLUSTRATIONS, ENGRAVED BY GILBERT AND GIHON, FROM DESIGNS BY DARLEY.

One volume, octavo; cloth, gilt.

BALDWIN'S PRONOUNCING GAZETTEER.

# A PRONOUNCING GAZETTEER:

Containing Topographical, Statistical, and other Information, of the more important Places in the known World, from the most recent and authentic Sources.

BY THOMAS BALDWIN,

*Assisted by several other Gentlemen.*

To which is added an APPENDIX, containing more than TEN THOUSAND ADDITIONAL NAMES, chiefly of the small Towns and Villages, &c., of the United States and of Mexico.

NINTH EDITION, WITH A SUPPLEMENT,

Giving the Pronunciation of near two thousand names, besides those pronounced in the Original Work: Forming in itself a Complete Vocabulary of Geographical Pronunciation.

ONE VOLUME 12MO.—PRICE, $1 50.

FIELD'S SCRAP BOOK.—NEW EDITION.

# Literary and Miscellaneous Scrap Book.

Consisting of Tales and Anecdotes—Biographical, Historical, Moral, Religious, and Sentimental Pieces, in Prose and Poetry.

COMPILED BY WM. FIELDS.

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND IMPROVED.

In one handsome 8vo. Volume. Price, $2 00.

# PEPYS' DIARY.

## DIARY AND CORRESPONDENCE

OF

## SAMUEL PEPYS, F.R.S.

SECRETARY TO THE ADMIRALTY IN THE REIGNS OF CHARLES II. AND JAMES II.

FROM THE ORIGINAL SHORT-HAND MS. IN THE PEPYSIAN LIBRARY, WITH A LIFE AND NOTES.

BY RICHARD LORD BRAYBROOKE.

First American, from the Fifth London Edition.

In four volumes. Price, $5

# THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

## Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for $8.99/month**

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

# LIPPINCOTT'S CABINET HISTORIES OF THE STATES,

BY. T. S. ARTHUR and WM. H. CARPENTER.

FIRST SERIES OF TWELVE VOLUMES ALREADY COMPLETE,
COMPRISING THE HISTORY OF

**Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, N. York, N. Jersey, Pennsylvania, Virginia, Georgia, Tennessee, Kentucky, Ohio, Illinois.**

Each History complete in one 12mo vol. of from 230 to 350 pages.

EXTRACTS FROM NOTICES OF THE PRESS.

"For School Libraries, and indeed for all Libraries, the Series will be found of great value."—*Buffalo Daily Courier.*

"They are eminently adapted both to interest and instruct, and should have a place in the Family Library of every American"—*New York Courier and Enquirer.*

"They contain the very pith and marrow of the record from the earliest periods down to the present time."—*Albany Express.*

"As a work for the young we know of none more suitable to put into their hands."—*Detroit Daily Advertiser.*

"They should be read by all who would know the annals of our country, and the wild legends on which our future epics and histories are to be built."—*Louisiana Courier.*

"Thousands of persons, old as well as young, will be tempted to read such volumes as these, and thus get a general knowledge of the history of the several States."—*Boston Traveller.*

"The value of such a Series cannot be too highly estimated."—*American Courier.*

"We predict great popularity for the Series"—*Philadelphia Evening Bulletin.*

"This will be of great practical value in extending a history of the individual States."—*Boston Journal.*

Price per volume, 42 cents.

# New Themes for the Protestant Clergy;

## CREEDS WITHOUT CHARITY, THEOLOGY WITHOUT HUMANITY, AND PROTESTANTISM WITHOUT CHRISTIANITY:

**With Notes by the Editor on the Literature of Charity, Population, Pauperism, Political Economy, and Protestantism.**

PRICE, ONE DOLLAR.

# SIMPSON'S MILITARY JOURNAL.

## JOURNAL OF A MILITARY RECONNOISSANCE FROM SANTA FE, NEW MEXICO, TO THE NAVAJO COUNTRY,

BY JAMES H. SIMPSON, A. M.,

FIRST LIEUTENANT CORPS OF TOPOGRAPHICAL ENGINEERS.

WITH 75 COLOURED ILLUSTRATIONS.

One volume, octavo. Price, Three Dollars.

# THE ABBOTSFORD EDITION

OF

# The Waverley Novels,

**Printed upon fine white Paper, with new and beautiful Type,**

**FROM THE LAST ENGLISH EDITION,**

EMBRACING

## THE AUTHOR'S LATEST CORRECTIONS, NOTES, ETC.,

**Complete in 12 volumes, demi-octavo, neatly bound in cloth,**

**With Illustrations,**

**FOR ONLY TWELVE DOLLARS,**

CONTAINING

WAVERLEY, or 'Tis Sixty Years Since...THE FORTUNES OF NIGEL.
GUY MANNERING.....PEVERIL OF THE PEAK.
THE ANTIQUARY.....QUENTIN DURWARD.
THE BLACK DWARF .....ST. RONAN'S WELL.
OLD MORTALITY.....REDGAUNTLET.
ROB ROY .....THE BETROTHED.
THE HEART OF MID-LOTHIAN.....THE TALISMAN.
THE BRIDE OF LAMMERMOOR.....WOODSTOCK.
A LEGEND OF MONTROSE .....THE HIGHLAND WIDOW, &c.
IVANHOE .....THE FAIR MAID OF PERTH.
THE MONASTERY.....ANNE OF GEIERSTEIN.
THE ABBOT.....COUNT ROBERT OF PARIS.
KENILWORTH .....CASTLE DANGEROUS.
THE PIRATE.....SURGEON'S DAUGHTER, &c.

**Any of the above Novels sold, in Paper Covers, at Fifty Cents each.**

ALSO,

## THE SAME EDITION

OF

# THE WAVERLEY NOVELS,

**In Twelve Volumes, Royal Octavo, on Superfine Paper, with**

**THREE HUNDRED CHARACTERISTIC AND BEAUTIFUL ILLUSTRATIONS.**

**ELEGANTLY BOUND IN CLOTH, GILT.**

**Price, Only Twenty-Four Dollars.**

# A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON BUSINESS;

## OR, HOW TO GET, SAVE, SPEND, GIVE, LEND, AND BEQUEATH MONEY

### WITH AN INQUIRY INTO THE CHANCES OF SUCCESS AND CAUSES OF FAILURE IN BUSINESS.

### BY EDWIN T. FREEDLY.

**Also, Prize Essays, Statistics, Miscellanies, and numerous private letters from successful and distinguished business men.**

**12mo., cloth. Price One Dollar.**

The object of this treatise is fourfold. First, the elevation of the business character, and to define clearly the limits within which it is not only proper but obligatory to get money. Secondly, to lay down the principles which must be observed to insure success, and what must be avoided to escape failure. Thirdly, to give the mode of management in certain prominent pursuits adopted by the most successful, from which men in all kinds of business may derive profitable hints. Fourthly, to afford a work of solid interest to those who read without expectation of pecuniary benefit.

# TRUTHS ILLUSTRATED by GREAT AUTHORS.

**A DICTIONARY OF OVER FOUR THOUSAND AIDS TO REFLECTION —QUOTATIONS OF MAXIMS, METAPHORS, COUNSELS, CAUTIONS, APHORISMS, PROVERBS, &c. &c., IN PROSE AND VERSE;**

**COMPILED FROM SHAKSPEARE, AND OTHER GREAT WRITERS, FROM THE EARLIEST AGES TO THE PRESENT TIME.**

**A new edition, with American additions and revisions.**

**ONE VOLUME, CROWN OCTAVO, VARIOUS BINDINGS.**

# The Footpath and Highway;

**OR,**

## WANDERINGS OF AN AMERICAN IN GT. BRITAIN,

**IN 1851 AND '52.**

### BY BENJAMIN MORAN.

This volume embodies the observations of the author, made during eight months' wanderings, as a correspondent for American Journals; and as he travelled much on foot, differs essentially from those on the same countries, by other writers. The habits, manners, customs, and condition of the people have been carefully noted, and his views of them are given in clear, bold language. His remarks take a wide range, and as he visited every county in England but three, there will be much in the work of a novel and instructive character.

**One vol. 12mo. Price $1 25.**